

**UC-NRLF**



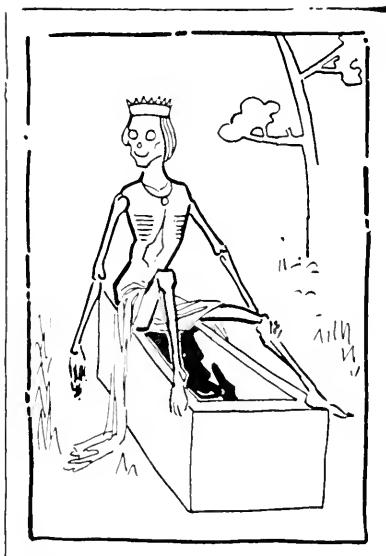
B 4 110 001

*J. A. H.* 8  
68996









MEDIEVAL FIGURES OF DEATH (DRAWN FROM ANCIENT PRINTS).

The University of Chicago

---

# ENGLISH STUDIES

(No. I.)

---

## THE ASSEMBLY OF GODS:

OR

THE ACCORD OF REASON AND SENSUALITY IN THE  
FEAR OF DEATH

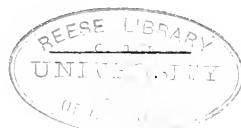
BY

JOHN LYDGATE.

EDITED FROM THE MSS. WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, INDEX OF PERSONS AND  
PLACES, AND GLOSSARY.

BY

OSCAR LOVELL TRIGGS, M.A., PH.D.



CHICAGO

The University of Chicago Press

1895

*68996*

DEDICATED TO MY MASTER

CHANCELLOR GEORGE EDWIN MacLEAN

WITH HUMBLE AFFECTION.

*Reese*

## P R E F A C E.

---

THIS edition of Lydgate's *Assembly of Gods* serves a double purpose. It is, first, a study in literature conducted at The University of Chicago, a part of the work having been first offered in candidacy for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy ; it is, second, a study of an English text undertaken for the Early English Text Society of London. The two institutions are associated in the publication.

The critical and linguistic parts of the work and the notes are as accurate and comprehensive as I am able to make them with the materials at hand. The hardihood of venturing to work upon ancient and foreign matters in a land that has no past at its back, that neither possesses antiquarian materials nor engenders antiquarian enthusiasms, will be appreciated by those who, like myself, have made the endeavor without what one may call a traditional training for the event.

The literary discussion of the Introduction maintains the general interest that any work of literature is wont to arouse. This portion represents the reaction which the poem made upon my mind with its own knowledge of mediæval life and art. While this part is necessarily somewhat pedantic I have tried to maintain my natural interest in literature as an exponent of life, as the expression of the imagination. The study of Allegory is a selection and condensation of materials that I have gathered for an extended history of Allegory.

Every one who works in Lydgate will find himself indebted at every turn to the investigations of Dr. Schick, now of Heidelberg, who edited the *Temple of Glas*—indebted not only for matters of fact but also for judgments of critical and literary insight. Workers in the same field will bear witness to the value of the edition of Lydgate and Burgh's *Secrees of Old Philisoffres* by Mr. Robert Steele, of London. For the facts relating to Lydgate's life and works, reference may be made to the very accurate and complete article on Lydgate by Mr. Sidney Lee in the Dictionary of National Biography.

At home I have every reason to be grateful for the encouragement and assistance given by Dr. George E. MacLean, formerly my teacher in the University of Minnesota; also for kindly help rendered by Professors McClintock, Blackburn, and Tolman, of the Department of English in The University of Chicago. Dr. Klaeber, of the University of Minnesota, has performed the offices of a friend in reviewing the proofs. My brother, Mr. Elloyd W. Triggs, has drawn from old prints the figures of Death for the frontispiece.

To Dr. Furnivall, the veteran Director of the work of the Early English Text Society, every one is indebted.

OSCAR LOVELL TRIGGS.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO,  
October 2, 1895.

## CONTENTS.

---

|                                            |           |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------|
| PREFACE                                    | iii-iv    |
| INTRODUCTION                               | vii-lxxvi |
| CHAPTER I.                                 |           |
| A. The Manuscripts—Texts A and B           | vii       |
| B. The Prints—Texts C and D                | ix        |
| CHAPTER II.                                |           |
| A. The Title                               | x         |
| B. The Authorship and Date                 | xi        |
| CHAPTER III.                               |           |
| The Metre—The Types A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H | xiv       |
| The Mixture of Free and Regular Stress     | xix       |
| CHAPTER IV.                                |           |
| The Rime—(1) End-Rime                      | xxi       |
| (a) Identical Rimes                        | xxi       |
| (b) Imperfect Rimes                        | xxi       |
| (c) Feminine Rimes                         | xxi       |
| (d) Medial <i>gh</i>                       | xxii      |
| Rime-Index                                 | xxii      |
| (2) Alliteration                           | xxix      |
| CHAPTER V.                                 |           |
| The Rime and the Final <i>c</i>            | xxx       |
| (1) The -y -ye Rimes                       | xxx       |
| (2) The Infinitives among the Riming Words | xxxii     |
| CHAPTER VI.                                |           |
| The Language                               |           |
| A. Vocabulary                              | xxxv      |
| B. Grammar                                 | xxxv      |

## CHAPTER VII.

## The Poem

|                                                                            |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| A. Literary Analysis - - - - -                                             | xxxvii |
| B. Literary Studies - - - - -                                              | xl     |
| (1) The Religious Character of the Poem - - - - -                          | xl     |
| (2) The Fear of Death and the Scorn of the World - - - - -                 | xliii  |
| (3) The Conventional Materials - - - - -                                   | 1      |
| (4) The Season <i>motif</i> - - - - -                                      | liii   |
| (5) The Vision - - - - -                                                   | lv     |
| (6) Proverbial Phrases - - - - -                                           | lvi    |
| (7) The Painted Wall - - - - -                                             | lvii   |
| (8) The Admixture of Pagan and Christian<br>Traditions - - - - -           | lviii  |
| (9) The Allegorical Type - - - - -                                         | lx     |
| (10) The Relationship between the Allegory and<br>the Moral Play - - - - - | lxi    |
| (11) The Allegory of the Vices and Virtues - - - - -                       | lxiii  |
| TEXT - - - - -                                                             | 1-61   |
| NOTES - - - - -                                                            | 77     |
| INDEX of Names and Persons, and Glossary - - - - -                         | 77     |

# INTRODUCTION.

## CHAPTER I.

### A. THE MANUSCRIPTS.

1. *Text A=R.3.19, Trin. Coll. Camb.*—This is a quarto volume, in paper, in handwriting of the second half of the fifteenth century. It contains poems by Chaucer, Lydgate and others (v. Skeat, *Chaucer's Minor P.* p. xliv. Trin: *Legend of Good Women*, p. xl. T. Skeat dates the MS. before 1500). The earliest possible date for the volume is fixed by a poem written by Geo. Ashby, entitled *Prisoner in the Fleet*, and dated 1463. The present poem occupies fols. 68a–98a. A table of *Interpretations* (v. Text p. 1) precedes the poem. The volume belonged formerly to John Stowe and was the source of most of Stowe's additions to Chaucer (Skeat).

This is the earliest and the only authoritative MS. known to me, and its readings are followed with but a very few emendations in the present text. The following are the textual changes made: Eolus is printed for the Colus of the MS.; Morpheus for Morpleus; in feere 166 for feere; Phebe 243, 566 for Phebus; foom 104 for from; presse 256 for preef; she 412 for he; best 634 for bost; ther 635 for the; hys 815 for was; be 875 for he; comparyson 891 for a form not clear in MS.; with 976 for without; fly 1185 for sty; macrocosme 1420 for macocrosme; omnipotent 1467 for omnipotens. The punctuation and the capitalization of proper names are mine.

The orthography is highly unphonetic, the most marked characteristics being the confused uses of *y* and *i*, and the arbitrary doubling of vowels. *Y* is either long or short: wys, whyle, myne; but ys, hys (also his), yn (also in), hyt (also hit), wyth (also with), tyll, wyll, lytyll, shyp, fysshe, sylvyr, knyghtes, sytting, begynne, etc.; *i* is used in king, philosophres, scisme, idylnesse, Diana, Cirus, Virgyle. The scribe wrote indifferently se or see, fle or flee, fre or free, so or soo, do or doo, wo or woo, mo or moo, whos or whoos, none or noon, hope or hoope, hole or hoole, sore or soore, holy or hooly, wordes

or woerde, god or good, ost oost or hoost, blood or blody, sone or soone; regularly—deere, leede, seene, seere, reepe, roote, poore, aboorde, stode, goold, roode, woode, broode, stoon, Ioob, etc. Final *e* (inorganic) is written with no regularity, occurring after short as well as long vowels. The consonants generally follow the rule of doubling after short vowels.

2. *Text B=Bibl. Reg. 8.D. II. Brit. Mus.*—This is written in color on vellum and in two parts. The first part, in a 15th century hand, contains Lydgate's *Siege of Troy* (5 books) and *Siege of Thebes* (illustrated). The second part, beautifully written and illuminated, is early 16th century work and contains a *Treatise between Trothe & Enformacion* by Will Cornish, an Elegy by John Skelton, Stanzas by Lydgate, his *Testament* and *Assembly of Gods*. The latter poem is indexed in the MS. as *Discord between Reason and Sensualitie*. This MS. does not differ materially from the Camb. MS. except in its omission of the table of Interpretations. It is, however, most probably a copy of the print by Wynken de Worde (G.11587), since it follows that print most closely in orthography and in the omission of line 812.

The chief variations of this text from A are given in the following collation. A few variants are given from Print D. To indicate the differences in orthography the variations of the first fifty lines are recorded complete.

---

|                                 |                             |                              |                                 |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. hys   his.                   | 2. toward   towarde;        | iourne   journey.            | 3. speere   spere;              |
| begonne   begon.                | 4. sytting   sittinge;      | solitary solitary;           | alone allone.                   |
| musyng   musinge;               | myght   might;              | 6. sensualyte   sensualite;  | oon one;                        |
| acorde   accorde;               | 7. cowde   coude;           | nat   not;                   | bryng   bringe;                 |
| longe   longe;                  | myght   might;              | oppresse   oppres,           | aboute   aboute.                |
| heunynesse   heunesse,          | cowde   coude,              | 10. heede   hede;            |                                 |
| 11. myn   myne;                 | habytacle   habitacle.      | 12. pylow   pillow.          |                                 |
| dysesse   disease.              | 14. anone   anon;           | came   cam.                  | 15. so lay   soo laye;          |
| traunse   traunsse.             | sleping   slepinge;         | wakyng wakinge.              | 17. sevile                      |
| 16. gret   grete;               | court   courte;             | instyse   justice.           | saide.                          |
| sylogyse   silogyse.            | 18. hit   it;               | 19. auaylyd auayled;         |                                 |
| hit   it;                       | ys   is;                    | seyde   saide.               |                                 |
| 20. whedir   wheder;            | 21. nedys   nedis.          |                              |                                 |
| wold   wolde;                   | 22. when   whan;            | 23. seyde   saide;           | hys                             |
| leede   lede.                   | sy   sec;                   | bettyr   better;             | his;                            |
| forthe forth.                   | 24. bettyr   better;        | must   muste.                | commaundiment   commaundemente. |
| tyll   till;                    | 25. whedir   wheder;        | 26. seyde   saide.           |                                 |
| parlyament parliament.          | 27. thedyward   thederward. | 28. seyde   saide.           |                                 |
| 29. hys   his.                  | 30. hys   his.              | 31. seyde thou   saide thou. |                                 |
| seyd   saide.                   | 32. seyde                   | 33. heuen   heuyn;           |                                 |
| 34. seyde   saide;              | 35. ys   is;                | outher   either;             |                                 |
| myn   myne;                     | lyt yell   litill;          | elles   ellis.               |                                 |
| abydying abidinge.              | corner   cornoure;          | callyd                       |                                 |
| 36. these wordys   thes wordes; | 37. hys   his.              | 38. raggys                   |                                 |
| sayd   saide.                   | 39. agayn   agayne;         | raggis                       |                                 |
| whome   whom.                   | 40. Diana   Dyana.          | arayd   arayde.              |                                 |
| 41. yeue   gyue;                | 42. seyng   sayenge;        | ageyn   ayen;                | soo   so.                       |

42. preyse | preise; lord | lorde. 43. proclamasion | proclamacioun. 44. Plutoys Plutos; commaundyd | commaunded. 45. vpon | vpon; peyne | Payne; strayte | strait. 46. Diana | Dyana; myght | might. 47. greefe | gref; gret | grete. 48. theym | themye; done | do; they | þei; compleynyd | compleyned. 49. begyn | begynne; Diana | Dyana; constreyndy | constreynde. 50. whyche | whiche. 56. yef | yf. 57. howe | hou. 70. thorough | thorugh. 71. syngler | synguler. 72. shuld | sholde; world | worlde. 73. dyspleser | displeasure. 77. yeue | omitted. 94. yow | you. 98. thorough | thrugh. 99. furst | first. 102. ferre | fer. 103. merueyle | mertuail. 104. from | come. 107. ebbe | eb. 109. dykes | dyks. 117. oo | one. 130. perysshe | perish. 132. pepyll | people. 135. requyreth | requireth. 155. vs | hus. 166. feere | infeere. 183. togedyr | togider. 186. alther | alder. 210. owne wele | one well. 216. pyne | Payne. 217. grogyng | grutching (D=grutchyng). 228. eft | oft. 233. lak | lacke. 234. cese | sease. 235. mery | mercy. 248. compaygnably | companably. 256. preef | presse(D=presse). 269. good | god. 283. fawchon | fawcon. 325. frese | frele (D=frese). 337. was then | than was (D=than was). 348. sythe | shithe. 355. chase | chose. 361. Phebus | Pheby. 434. forthe | for. 449. sewerte | suerte. 462. smete | smote. 473. cosdras | coldras. 480. owther | eyther. 513. leyte | lightnynge. 520. woll | will. 535. drowthe | drought. 569. I hope shall | I hope I shall. 587. defaute | the faute (D=the faute). 607. at | omitted (D omits at). 634. bost | best. 648. foule rybaudy | foule and rybaudry (D has and). 673. braggars | kraghers. 721. for sowght he | forsoth it. 753. to do a | to a. 763. row | route (D=rowe). 773. wore | were. 812 | omitted. 815. was | and. 825. standarde | standartis. 875. he | be. 966. haue ye lost | haue lost (D omits ye). 970. guytormes | guytors. 974, 981. dubbyd | doubled (D=doubled). 1094. rerewarde | reward. 1113. mervt | might (D=myght). 1161. she | he. 1185. sty | fly. 1201. as they came by Conscience | as thei to C. cam (D follows B). 1243. bende | ben (D=ben). 1358. kept | kepe (D=kept). 1373. menetyme whyle | meanewhill. 1407. omnipotens | omnipotent. 1516. singlerly | syngulerly. 1537. awter | auter. 1538. Osee | Ozee (D=Ozee.) 1539. Salmon | Salomon. 1591. brayne | barayne. 1701. shall | sall. 1705. nouelte | newelte (D=newelte). 1744. deuyacion | deuocyon. 1806. gnawyng | knawinge. 1854. tryfyl | triphells. 1858. sauns | sauns (D=sanuz). 1975. a a | aha. 2020. dowtys | doubtes. 2062. accusacion | actuacyon. 2103. descendyd | descendeth.

## B. THE PRINTS.

3. *Text C=G. 11587. Brit. Mus.*—This is the first print of the poem by Wynken de Worde, a folio dated 1498. It is an unique copy. It contains the *Canterbury Tales* and Lydgate's *Assembly of Gods*. Lydgate's "treatyse" is printed in double columns on the last 15 leaves without pagination. On the recto of the first leaf is a woodcut of the Canterbury pilgrims seated around a table. This print is especially valuable in that it assigns the work to Lydgate in the colophon: "Thus endeth this lytyll moralized treatyse compiled by dan Iohn Lydgat somtyme monke of Bury on whose soule

have mercy." The print has commonly the readings of MS.B. It omits line 812 but has the table of Interpretations.

4. *Text D=C. 13. a. 21. King's Collect. Brit. Mus.*—This print is also by W. de Worde and of about the same date as the first. The Catalogue of the Brit. Mus. and Mr. Lee (*Dict. Nat. Biog.* Vol. XXXIV, p. 313, v.) give the date 1500, but Dr. Schick, on the authority of Mr. Gordon Duff (Brit. Mus.), says it is earlier, perhaps 1498. It contains Lydgate's *Story of Thbes*, *Assemble de dycus* and *Temple of Glas* (v. Hazlitt, *Bibl.* p. 358, No. 3 under Lydgate; Schick, *Temp. of Glas*, E. E. T. Soc., p. xxvi, 9). This print exhibits no notable changes in the text. It follows most closely MS. A.

5. Later reprints by Pynson and Redman, under the title "The Interpretacyon of the Natures of Goddyns and Goddesses," show no important textual differences (v. Hazlitt, *Bibl.* p. 358, No. 4 (b) (c) (d), Redman's last edition is dated 1540).

---

## CHAPTER II.

### A. THE TITLE.

W. de Worde's second print (D above) has the colophon: "Here endeth a lytyll Tratyse named, *Le Assemble de dycus*." This is followed by de Worde's imprint and, on the following page, by the cut of the Chaucer pilgrims seated about a table, also entitled *Le Assemble de dycus*. Redman's late reprint (1540) ends with the colophon: "Here endeth a lytyll treatyse named *the assemble of goddis and goddesses*." The catalog of Lydgate's works, probably made by John Stowe for the Chaucer-Lydgate volume, printed by Adam Islip in London in 1598 and 1602, includes the *Banquet of Gods and Goddesses with a discourse of Reason and Sensualitie* by Lydgate (ed. 1602 fol. 376; ed. 1598 fol. 394).

In the Camb. MS. the title, in the handwriting of Mr. Beaupre Bell (Camb. c. 1727), is given as *Assembly of Gods and Goddesses by Lydgate*. The Brit. Mus. MS. is catalogued as *Discord between Reason and Sensualitie*. Lowndes (*Bibl. Bohn Lib.*, p. 1419) uses the title *Banquet of the Gods*. Ritson (*Bibl. Poet.*) lists the poem apparently twice, as *The interpretation of the names of goddes and goddesses* (No. 13) and probably confusing it with *Reason and Sensuality* (Fairfax 16), as *Banquet of gods and goddesses with a discourse of reason and*

*sensualitie* (No. 113). Bale, probably noticing the list of *Interpretations* prefixed to W. de Worde's print, enumerates among Lydgate's writings, *De Nominibus Deorum*. Collier (*Hist. of Dram. P. I.*, p. 30) refers to the poem under the title, *Interpretation of the names of Goddes and Goddesses*. Schick, in his chronology of Lydgate's works (*Temp. of Glas cix.*), adopts the title, *The Assembly of Gods*; and so, following him, Dr. Furnivall in the Early Eng. Text Society's Announcements, Sidney Lee in the *Dict. of Natl. Biog.* (Vol. XXXIV., p. 313, V., 18) and Mr. Courthope in his *History of English Poetry* (I. p. 322). We may suppose, on the authority of W. de Worde's print, that this was Lydgate's own title. It is not, however, a sufficient title as titles go, inasmuch as it does not express the central moral of the story. A truer name would be the *Accora of Reason and Sensuality*.

#### B. THE AUTHORSHIP AND DATE.

1. *The authorship.* The external testimony is in itself quite sufficient to establish the fact of Lydgate's authorship. W. de Worde's first print (C) ascribes the work to our monk of Bury in the colophon: "Thus endeth this lytta moralized treatyse compiled by dan Iohn Lydgat somtyme monke of Bury on whose soule have mercy." All the early lists (of Bale, Dibdin, etc.) agree in the assignment. Collier, in his *History of Dramatic Poetry* (Vol. I., p. 30), printed, for the first time since the black-letter copies, a few stanzas of the poem, referring the work to Lydgate. Dyce, in his notes on Skelton's works (p. 144), makes the same reference. The MS. was not known to Warton or Morley. A definite reference to our poem is found in Hawes's *Pastime of Pleasure* (Chap. XIV.). Hawes was a pupil of Lydgate and recounts as the works of his master, the *Life of St. Edmund*, *Falls of Princes*, *Chorl and Bird*, *Court of Sapience*, *Troy Book*, *Temple of Glas*:

"And betwene vertue and the lyfe vycyous  
Of goddes and goddes[ses] a boke solacyous  
He did compyle."

This must refer to the *Assembly of Gods*.

That Lydgate's name was associated with the battle of the vices and virtues is further indicated by the "extemporal play" of the *Seven Deadlie Siyns*, contrived by Richard Tarleton and performed before King Henry VI. (v. description by Collier, *Hist. Dram. P. III.*, p. 198). Our monk Lydgate (here spelled Lidgate) is supposed

to regulate the performance, to deliver the prolog and epilog and to explain the dumb shows.

As to internal evidence Lydgate's finger marks are all here : the monkish piety, the moralization, the allegory, the way in which he dwells upon the themes of death ; then his stock words and phrases, especially those repeated to fill up the lines (v. notes and *Temp. of Glas* p. cxxxvii.) the irregular lines (cf. *Secrees*), the rime-forms, and the peculiar Lydgatian metre (type, C. p. xvi : v. Schick, *Temple of Glas*, lviii); further, the saying of things as if "undir correcciooun" (cf. *Secrees*, p. 1, 2), the self-depreciation in confessing his thin brain (text, l. 1591) and thin wit (text, l. 1997) and the request to take the very little wheat from the much chaff of the poem (text, l. 2071-2; cf. *Secrees*, p. xx. and *Temp. of Glas*, p. cxl). Lydgate is one of the easiest poets to detect for his conventional manner.

2. *The Date.* So far as I am able to determine from a study of the contents there is nothing to indicate the exact date of the poem's composition. The allegory of the poem is wholly removed from historical place or time. Dr. Schick conjectures the date 1403. In consideration of the general temper of the work, quite prosaic one must allow, the nature of the allegory, and its dominant note of death, I am inclined to assign its writing to Lydgate's second period, that is, after 1412 (the date of the first lines of the *Troy-Book*), as far removed as possible from the genial influence of Chaucer which is so distinctly traceable in the monk's early works. As a youth Lydgate was loath to enter the monastic life, and the poems of his first period have a freshness, a humor, and a love of nature, that belong to the world outside the cloister. But we have the proof of the *Legends* and *Secrees* and the *Testament* that, as he approached age, he grew more pious and more prosaic. The *Assembly of Gods* is the work of a thorough Benedictine both in theory and in practise. And there is a positive lowering of the poetic tone. There are no plaints of lovers, not a word about the "floure of wamanhede," not a happy thought of nature. Life is grown serious, and the monk, anxious concerning the battle with Vice and earnest to direct sinners to the Lord of Light, writes in the repentant prayerful temper of the *Testament*.

In arguing for an earlier date it would be true to say that the influence of the *Romanant of the Rosc* is somewhat evident in the allegory, and that the work is rather more original and creative than his late riming histories, and it appears in the classification of his works by

Sidney Lee (*Dict. Natl. Biog.*, Vol. XXXIV, p. 313, 314) that most if not all of the poems under the head of "Allegories, Fables and Moral Romances" were written before 1412.

On the other hand the decline in the *Assembly of Gods* in poetic power is, as noted above, very marked, judging from his known early works. In poetic conception and phrasing the poem is in every way inferior to the *Chorl and Bird* and the *Temple of Glas*; the one written before 1400 and dedicated to "his maister with humble affeccioun," the other written about 1403 in imitation of Chaucer's *Hous of Fame*. There is not a line so poetic as these verses from the *Temple of Glas*:

"A world of beaute compassid in hir face  
Whose persant loke doþ þurugh myn hert[e] race" 755-6;

nor a maxim so unworldly wise as these from the *Chorl and Bird*:

"Songe and prison have noon accordaunce," Min. P., p. 183,

and

"Bettir is fredom withe litelle in gladnesse  
Than to be thralle withe al worldly richesse," Min. P., p. 193;

not a moral so manly as

"When wo approchēþ lat myrþ most habound,  
As manhood axeþ; and þough þou fele smert,  
Lat not to manie knownen of þin hert,"—*Temple of Glas*, 1177-9.

The theme also, notwithstanding its place among the allegories, seems to indicate a late date. While Lydgate was always familiar with the thought of change and death, it being his frequent opinion that "all do but show a shadow transitory" and that "all stant in chaunges like a midsomer rose," it is fair to assume that the dread of death would be most dominant after the period of his youth. The *Dance of Macabre*, which is descriptive of the painting of Death's procession on the walls of St. Paul's, belongs to the second period, perhaps to the year 1425 (Schick, *Temple of Glas*, cxii); likewise his translation of De Deguileville's *Pèlerinage de l' Homme*, representing life as a pilgrimage somewhat in the manner of Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress*, belongs to this period, the year 1426.

The proof from the metre and from the language is also, I think, on the side of a late date. The measure, very broken and irregular at one's best mending, is nearer the long lines of the *Secrees* than the very good verses of the *Temple of Glas*. There is also a change

in the poetic phraseology, as will be seen by a study of the riming words, which change compels a date as near as possible to the time when the final *e* ceased to be spoken. Though, as to this, it is not impossible that Burgh or some other of Lydgate's pupils rewrote the poem as we have it in the text. Still it is not probable that anyone would alter the riming words.

On the whole I should wish to assign the composition of the *Assembly of Gods* to about the year 1420 or perhaps, the *Story of Thebes* being finished, to 1422 or even later. In the absence of direct testimony, any more exact statement of the date must wait the publication of Lydgate's other works, which will furnish a surer basis for poetic, metrical and linguistic tests.

### CHAPTER III.

#### THE METRE.

In the MS. the metre is very irregular. Of course little dependence can be placed upon MSS. of the fifteenth century, written after the final *e* ceased to be sounded. We know that many little words were inserted by the scribes, who regarded the lines as imperfect. So whether Lydgate himself failed in this poem in his measures or whether the fault is due to the scribes can not be determined. However, it does not appear that Lydgate in any of his poems was especially skillful in the mechanism of his art. He was himself aware of the imperfections of his verse, and in the *Troy-Book* he confessedly "sette asyde" truth of metre and took "none hede nouther of shorte nor longe." Moreover, none of Lydgate's pupils exhibit any especial grace of form. Burgh, his nearest pupil, readily acknowledges in continuing the *Scenes* that he is unable to keep his measures in time and proportion (See, st. 210). If we take Chaucer's line as the standard of melody, it is probable that Lowell's estimate of Lydgate's verse, a "barbarous jangle," is the correct one. Old French verse with its great variety of lines and measures (no less than sixteen —Skeat's *Chaucer*, Vol. VI, p. lxxxvii) and indeed Chaucer's own verse forms, may have given Lydgate his license to vary his metres at will. If we forego a fixed metre and read the lines with their natural accentuation, a fairly good rhythm is secured.

Our present poem, *The Assembly of Gods*, is written in the com-

mon seven line stanza, which came to be known as the Rhyme Royal, rhyming *ababbbc*. The scheme of the Chaucerian stanza cannot be rigidly applied. Every liberty in respect of length of line and character of measure is taken by Lydgate. Some lines are bald prose.

Type A. In the first place examples will be given of lines which seem to have five iambic measures with the caesural pause after the second measure. This may be called the standard-line form.

- 43: Then was | there made | a proc | lama | sion.
- 45: Vppon | the peyne | of strayte | correc | cion.
- 57: Remem | bre furst | howe I | a godd | esse pure.
- 163: For hys | excuse " came yn | a mess | ynger.
- 750: And bade | hem come | in all | the haste | they myght.
- 810: He semyd | a lorde | of ryght | gret ex | cellence.
- 980: To wynne | theyr spores | they seyde | they wold | asay.
- 1026: Whyche made | the grounde | as slep | yr as | an yele.
- 1086: But all | the tyme whyle Ver | tew was | away.
- 1146: And fro | thens forth | to Sat | ysfac | cion.

i. The caesura in the standard line falls generally after the second measure, but Lydgate shifts its position at liberty. He has more freedom than Chaucer in this respect, though the latter is by no means regular in his pauses (v. Skeat's *Chaucer*, Introd. sec. 107). The examples here given to illustrate this variation include lines of different types (see below). The pause may fall

(a) after the first measure :

- 566: To compleyn than Phebe styrte vppon her fete.
- 1504: Sate & Scrypture was scrybe to them all.

(b) after the third :

- 18: To the gret Court of Mynos || the iustyse.
- 782: But the felde was clene defaute || fond he none.

(c) after the fourth :

- 621: Pryde was the furst /at next hym roode || God woote.
- 879: And made hem be caryed toward Vyee / y wys.

(d) twice or thrice in a line :

- 603: Wherfore /ow Cerberus | I now the dyscharge.
- 1231: Ys he soo /quod Vertu | well he shall be taught.
- 1210: Well / quoth Feythe || for hys sake || I shall do that I may do.
- 1377: Now Prayer || eft Fastyng | & oftyn tyme Penaunce.

Type B. An extra syllable may occur before the caesura and at the end of the line. Two such syllables may also occur before the caesura (v. ll. 38, 390, 808).

## (a) Before cæsura :

- 38: Brought theder Eolus in raggys euyll arrayd.  
 160: Shape vs an answer to thyne accusationt.  
 305: Rewler of knyghthode of Prudence the god dese.  
 390: There was sad Sychero and Arystotyll olde.  
 456: Thus haue I dewly with all my dilygence.  
 808: Next whom came Pacyence that nowhere hath no pere.  
 908: Well menyng merchauntes with trew artyfyceres.

## (b) At end of line :

The form is comparatively infrequent (v. Chap. IV, c).

- 9: So ponderously I cowde make noon obstacle.  
 12: To rowne with a pylow me semyd best tryacle.  
 60: Thys traytour Eolus hath many of my places.  
 940: In thy mene tyme whyle Vertu thus preynded.

Type C. The thesis may be wanting at the cæsura.

- 8: For long er I myght slepe me gan oppresse.  
 68: So that the deere shall haue no resort.  
 85: Thow knowest well that I haue the charge.  
 87: No shyp may sayle keruell boot ner barge.  
 233: For lak of shade I dar vnyrtake.  
 270: And next by her sate the god Saturne.  
 600: No maner of thyng can hym hurt nor dere.  
 618: Hard as any horn blakker fer then soot.  
 806: Roody as a roose ay he kept hys chere.

1. This is a form almost peculiar to Lydgate (v. Schick, *Temp. of Glas*, p. lviii, C.), though Chaucer occasionally employed it (Skeat, *Chaucer*, Vol. VI, Introd., sec. 110). It is easy however to read some of these lines with four accents: thus line 85 may read: "Thou knówest wéll that I háue the chárge." Other lines, however, as 618, 87, etc., can have no other reading than that given.

Type D. A thesis may be wanting in the first measure.

- 17: For he seyde I must yeve attendaunce.  
 106: Secundly whereas my nature ys.  
 124: That to theym shuld fall opon the see.  
 197: Madame ye shall hane all your plesere.  
 251: To be had wherfore ye may nat let.  
 557: Walewyng with hys wawes & tomblyng as a ball.  
 640: Malyce Frowardness gret Ielacy.  
 645: Wrong Rauyne sturdy Vyolence.  
 654: Heresy Errour with Idolatry.

Type E. A trochee may take the place of an iambic in the first measure. These measures are best read, however, with "hovering accent," as Ten Brink (*Chaucer's Sp.*, p. 182, sec. 316) and Gum-

mere (*Handbook of Poetics*, pp. 186, 187, 206, 224) read similar lines in Chaucer and other English poets.

- 5: Musyng | on a maner || how that I myght make.
- 374: Cryspe was | her skyn || her eyen columbyne.
- 418: Seyeing to | her sylf || that chere should þey repent.
- 472: Iason ne | Hercules || went they neuver so wyde.
- 631: Slōwthe was | so sleepy || he came all behynde.
- 648: Boldnes | in Yll || with Foule Rybady.
- 747: Pepyll | to reyse || hys quarrell to menteyn.
- 760: Gaderyd | to Vertew || in all that they mowte.
- 1174: Hauyng | in her hande || the palme of vyctory.

Type F. There may be a double thesis in any measure. In many cases the extra syllable may be slurred over. But the trisyllabic measure was without doubt an accepted poetic form (v. Ellis, *Early Eng. Pron.*, ch. iv, p. 334; ch. vii, p. 648. Ellis cites 69 examples in the Prolog. See Skeat, ed. of *Prioresses Tale*, etc., Introd. p. lxiii).

- 7: But I cowde | nat bryng | about | that mon | acorde.
- 66: He breketh | hem asondre || or rendeth | hem roote | & rynde.
- 98: For hurt | of my name || thorough | thys gret | offence.
- 126: With a sod | eyn pyry || he lapp | yd hem | in care.
- 139: The more gre | uous peyne || and hast | y iug | ement.
- 199: But furst | I yow pray || let me | the mat | er here.
- 361: And ones | in the moneth || with Phe | bus was | she meynt.
- 383: That he ther | with glad | yd all | the com | pany.
- 410: But there was | no rome | to set | hyr in | that hous.
- 472: Iason | ne Hercules || went | they neu | er so wyde.
- 487: To the dynt | of my dart || for doole | nor des | tyny.

Type G. Lydgate frequently expands the normal pentameter line to six measures. Mr. Steele, the editor of the *Secrees*, remarks that the greater part of that poem might be scanned on a six-beat basis. If such lines were of sporadic occurrence they might be slurred over, but there are so many lines with the longer rhythm that the acceptance of the Alexandrine is rendered imperative. It is possible, of course, to read some of these lines with four accents, as if they were formed on the model of the alliterative four-beat measures as found in the Mystery Plays (v. *York Plays*, ed. by Smith, Introd., p. li), certain ballads (v. *King John and the Abbot of Canterbury*) and the contemporary alliterative poems. The long doggerel lines in Shakespeare may be reduced to this form (v. *Quell. u. For.*, vol. 61, p. 119, 3). But the use of the Alexandrine was now established both by itself and in association with other metres (v. Schipper, *Engl. Met.*, I, Kap. 5, 8, 13, and cf. its later usage by

Wyatt, and see *Mirror for Magistrates*, ed. by Haslewood, p. 123, for mixture of pentameter and Alexandrine), and Lydgate would naturally adopt the form at a time when every irregularity in verse was permissible. He himself was most attracted to the French forms, though the English alliterative principle still had some force in his verse. I think there can be no question about Lydgate's Alexandrines.

Mr. Ellis (*Early Eng. Pron.*, ch. vii, p. 649) thought that Chaucer made use of this variation and noticed four instances in the prolog of the *Canterbury Tales* of what seemed to him to be a six-measure line (ll. 148, 232, 260, 764), all of which have the justification of the best MSS. Zupitza and Skeat in their critical texts of the *Prologue* reduce these lines to the normal (l. 764 by slurring).

- 4: Sytting ' all sol ' ytary alone ' besyde | a lake.  
 54: Accord | yng to ' the offence that he | to me | hath do.  
 161: And ellys | I most | procede opon | thy iug ' ement.  
 253: And when | Apol | lo sy " hit wold | noon oth | er be.  
 267: Lyke | as she | had take | the man | tell & | the ryng.  
 298: The pal | eys ther | of shone as though | hit had | be day.  
 325: Clad | in rus ' set frese and brech | ed lyke | a here.  
 327: A shepe | crook in | hys hand he spar ' yd for | no pryd.  
 340: Aboute | hym in | hys gyr ' dyll stede hyng fyssh | esman ya score.  
 347: She lok | ed eu ' er about as though | she had | be mad.  
 359: Fat | she was ' of face but of | complex | yon feynt.  
 364: And on | hyr hede | she weryd | a crowne | of syl | uyr pure.  
 367: He had | a gyld ' yn tong as fyll | for hys degree.  
 372: By | hym sate | Dame Venus with col | our crys | tallyne.  
 385: In sygne | that he | was mastyr & lord | of that | banket.

So I read lines 401, 404, 420, 421, 422, 462, 476, 490, 493, 496, 497, 500, 504, 525, 542, 560, 634, 656, 817, 864, 937, 949, 952, 962, 995, 999, 1048, 1050, 1093, 1097, 1106, 1113, 1120, 1167, 1204, 1210, 1225, 1239, 1240, 1267, 1344, 1589, 1792, 2009, 2100, 2106, 2107. Lines 61, 102, 128, 130, 131, 338, 343, 578, 672, 856, 1000, might be read either as Alexandrines or as pentameters of type F.

Type II. There are occasional four-measure lines.

- 232: So that | your game | shall nat dysere.  
 307: Safe on | her hede a crowne | ther stood.  
 444: All ye | gret goddyns yeue at | tendaunce.  
 693: Getters chydres causers | of frayes.  
 758: To Ver | tews frendys thus all | aboute.  
 979: These four | tene knyghtes made Vyee that day.  
 1659: Wherfore | ar chyl | dren put | to scoole.  
 1834: Of eu | ery mans | oppyn | yon.

In this manner may be read lines 16, 17, 22, 27, 28, 47, 50, 94, 134, 182, 204, 530, 550, 703, 722, 916, 1065, 1243, 1506, 1654, 1655, 1740, 1839, 2004, 2035, 2046.

2. Of course many lines can be scanned in more than one way. Other prosodists will probably not agree with the scansion of the examples given. It is difficult and often impossible to determine the pronunciation of many words. I think the final *e*'s are often, if not generally, mute. The rhythm of many lines would be broken by the requirements of the Chaucerian scheme of inflections. It is evident that during Lydgate's lifetime the language was undergoing transformation. The general irregularity of the metre, the intrusion into Chaucer's carefully constructed seven-line stanza of the four and six-beat lines, and the frequent alliteration, suggest the influence of the older English metrical forms. But it is further obvious that Lydgate used in composition the principles both of metre and of stress.

This mixture in his measures of free and regular stress, seems to confirm the opinion<sup>1</sup> of Professor Gummere (v. *Amer. J. of Phil.* Vol. VII, I, p. 46) that the English iambic is not merely the French measure introduced by a *tour de force*, but a "harmonizing of two great systems, the Germanic and the Romance, the rhythmic and the metric, on the basis of two representative measures," the heroic pentameter line being the "result of forcing the iambic movement upon some late form of our old four-stress verse." The conditions are thus stated by Professor Gummere: "On the one hand, four stresses, fixed pause, indeterminate amount of light syllables; on the other, five stresses, shifting and slighter pause, strict ordering and number of light syllables." Proofs of such compromise are furnished by Chaucer, the majority of whose pentameter verses are formed, to some extent, on the plan of the O. E. line of four stresses; by the Mystery and Morality Plays, whose irregular measures very plainly display the continuance of the English traditions; by Skelton, whose peculiar metre seems to be due to the splitting of the O. E. long line and the riming of the parts; by Spenser in his

<sup>1</sup> Little attention has been given hitherto to this view of Professor Gummere, but the trend of opinion now seems to favor it. See Courthope's treatment of Lydgate's verse in his recent *History of English Poetry*, I., pp. 326-33. Cf. the statement of Mr. I. I. Gollancz in his edition of Cyn. *Christ*, p. xvii: "The secret of Marlowe's discovery (the secret of blank verse) lies in this that he Teutonized the 'versi sciolti' imported from Italy."

*Shepherd's Calendar*, which combines free and regular stress in a remarkable manner; and again by the heroic verses of Shakespeare and Spenser and of Dryden and Pope, many of which have rhetorically but four stresses.

On the whole Lydgate followed his French models, or more strictly his Chaucer. The many alliterative phrases in his poem illustrate, however, the traditions of the older poetry; such a line as 66b

“*or rendeth hem roote & rynde*”

indicating the “*rum ram ruf*” principle of composition. The variable measure and line reveal the confusion into which English verse had fallen after Chaucer, it being still uncertain whether free or regular stress would prevail. Had Lydgate been favored with Chaucer’s literary environment and gifted with his genius and ear for rhythm it is probable that he might have maintained the master’s delicate Normanized literary English, but the influence of the vulgar Suffolk tongue with its accentual principles of verse and its rapidly disappearing inflections was too strong for the monk. Chaucer’s regular measures—regular because artificial—were given over to confusion. The oral, in the rude times of the fifteenth century, superseded the literary. From Chaucer to Spenser no one was able to give permanency to the forms of English verse.

That the metre is at best extremely irregular is shown by counting the syllables. In the first one thousand lines, slurring wherever possible and omitting, except where forbidden by the rhythm, the final *e*’s, the following result is given :

|     |                    |                      |
|-----|--------------------|----------------------|
| 2   | 14-syllable lines. | See 66, 340.         |
| 5   | 13      “      “   | See 404, 525.        |
| 47  | 12      “      “   |                      |
| 210 | 11      “      “   |                      |
| 546 | 10      “      “   |                      |
| 179 | 9      “      “    |                      |
| 11  | 8      “      “    | See p. xvii, Type F. |

Types B and F make up the 11-syllable lines and D and C the 9-syllable lines. G has frequently but 11 syllables (v. line 359).

## CHAPTER IV.

## THE RIME.

1. *End-rime*:—The rime is generally pure throughout. Correct masculine rimes are the rule. The most numerous rime-endings are -ace, -ake, -all, -aunce, -ay, -e, -ence, -ent, -ere, -esse, -y, -yde, -yght, -o, -on, -ore, -ought, -ow, -ure (*v. Rime Index*).

(a) *Identical rimes* occur in a number of cases. By identical rimes I mean here those in which the riming syllables coincide in sound throughout. These syllables may be etymologically different. *Acorde* 6; *monacorde* 7; *malapert* 503; *pert* 504; *dyscharge* 603; *charge* 605; *ouerse* 772; see 775; *take* 1388, 1400; *vndyrtake* 1390, 1411; *become* 1406; *welcome* 1407; *serue* 1408; *deserue* 1410; *goon* 1836; *ouergoon* 1838; *before* 1871; *therfore* 1874; *hande* 1912; *hande* 1914; *dyffuse* 1955; *refuse* 1957; *dyscorde* 2015; *monacorde* 2016; *alone* 923; *euerychone* 924 (14 cases). *Identical suffix-rimes*: (a) *with initial consonant*:—*iugement* 139; *auysment* 140; *resystence* 228; *sentence* 229; *satysfaccion* 834; *dysposicion* 836; *sadnes* 1380; *gladnes* 1382; *royally* 268; *sykerly* 270; *herytykes* 678; *scismatykes* 679; *pycture* 1514; *creature* 1516; (b) *with initial vowel*:—*varyaunce* 244; *ordynaunce* 245; *conuenyent* 249; *expedyent* 250; *precious* 790; *vyctoryous* 791; *swerers* 702; *morderers* 704 etc. (about 140 cases of such rimes (b) and (a)).

(b) *Imperfect rimes* are occasional:—*am* 86; *man* 88; *strong* 260; *hand* 262; *came* 785; *man* 787; *came* 862; *than* 864; *doon* 1217; *com* 1218; *come* 1336; *oblyuyone* 1337; *caime* 1702; *woman* 1704 (7 cases of *assonance*); *beste* 1056; *lyste* 1057 (*v. lyst* 1297; *myst* 1299); *neere* 1616; *desyre* 1617 (*v. desyre* 1870; *wyre* 1872,—cf. *Schick* Intro. Ixi); *bedde* 2038; *vnderstande* 2040; *crysmary* 1444; *sanctuary* 1446; *probably imperfect*:—*syt* 191; *yet* 193 (perhaps= *yit* as in Chaucer); *fete* 566; *yete* 567 (cf. *yet* 193; *syt* 191); *ende* 1777; *mynde* 1778 (*mynde* 1923; *ende* 1922; *spende* 1920; *ende* 1931; *mende* 1932; but cf. *mynde* 1784; *beynde* 1785).

(c) *Feminine rimes* occur in the following instances:—*obstacle* 9; *habytacle* 11; *tryacle* 12; *chases* 58; *places* 60; *manaces* 61; *philosophres* 272; *cofres* 273; *centre* 769; *entre* 770; *seuyn* 821; *heuyn* 823; *steuyn* 824; *euer* 1203, 1974; *neuer* 1204, 1973; ? *reson* 1259; *seson* 1260; *crysmary* 1444; *sanctuary* 1446; *tary* 1447; *story* 1513; *memory* 1515; *fable* 1686; *acceptable* 1687; *ymages* 1731; *stages* 1733; *passages* 1734; *nother* 1807; *brother* 1809; *parable* 1987:

fable 1988; ? compleynyd 48; constreynyd 49 (cf. herde 498; conqueryd 500 = masc.); grauntyd 118, 874; hauntyd 119, 875; promysyd 482; dysphysyd 483; preuydyd 946; guydyd 948; aqueyntyd 1345; peyntyd 1347; deuydyd 1765; prouydyd 1767; ? declaryd 736; sparyd 738; ? retornyd 1119; mornyd 1120; ? excusyd 1399; dysvysyd 1400; *probably*: — requyreh 135; expyreth 137; desyreh 138 (but cf. gooth 426; wrooth 427 = masc.); sygnyfyeth 2010; applyeth 2012; chaungeth 2094; estraungeth 2096.

*Doubtful cases are:* — colowres 321; shoures 322 (but cf. embassatours 1016; shoures 1018); oonyss 499; boonyss 501; noonys 502; goddys 491; peseccoddyss 493; dremes 1854; stremes 1855 (but cf. astronomers 1696; speres 1698; yeres 1699; laborers 911; freres 913); *the final e's are perhaps pronounced in these words:* — releue (inf.) 13; sleue (obl. sng.) 14; kepē (inf.) 107; depē (adj. pl.) 109; crepē (inf.) 110; morē 149; storē (obl. sng.) 151; sorē (adv.) 152; Saturnē 279; mornē (inf.) 280; hedē (obl. sng.) 286; lecdē (obl. sng.) 287; cornē (obl. sng.) 293; hornē (obl. sng.) 294; leuē (obl. sng.) 520; foryenē (inf.) 522; myscheuē (inf.) 523; carrē (obl. sng.) 554; marrē (inf.) 556; wydē (obl. sng.) 664; abydē (inf.) 665; hertē (obl. sng.) 1451; aduertē (inf.) 1453; stertē (inf.) 1454; foolē (obl. sng.) 1658; scoolē (obl. sng.) 1659; pylgremagē (obl. sng.) 1779; passagē (obl. sng.) 1781; holdē 1821; oldē 1823; sonnē (obl. sng.) 1896; tonnē (obl. sng.) 1897.

(d) Medial *gh* (O. E. *h*), already weak in Chaucer, has ceased to be pronounced in the cases following, and probably therefore in all cases: — about 261; fought 263; mought 264 (cf. aboute 386; route 388; mowte 760; dowte 761; abowte 1124; showte 1122; withowte 1125); ryght 489; saf condyght 490; ipocrytes 701; ryghtes 703; sodomites 708; syghtes 710; cyrcrete 757; myght 759; trypartyte 1031; lyght 1033; wyght 1034; syght 1037; wyght 1039; fyght 1112; meryt 1113; bryght 1367; whyte 1369; myght 1370 (cf. infynyte 1605; myte 1607; whyte 1608; myte 1814; appetyte 1810); myght 1801; dyspyte 1803; lyte 1804.

## RIME INDEX.

### A

- able 1686, 1687; 1087, 1088.
- ace 210, 221, 222; 300, 301; 316, 318; 475, 476; 538, 539; 1212, 1214; 1407; 1498; 1758, -as 1760; 1826, 1827; 1880, -as 1878, 1881, 2000, 2100. See -as.
- aicle 11, 12.
- ad 345, 347, 348; 580, 581.

- ade 69, 70; 1560, 1561.
- adde 1415, 1417; 1875, 1876; 1982, 1984.
- aff 2071, 2072.
- aft 1133, 1134.
- age 1770, 1781; 1889, 1890; 1899, 1901, 1902; 1906, 1908, 1909.
- ages 1731, 1733, 1734.
- ak 366, 368, 369.
- ake 2, 4, 5; 233, 235, 236; 608, 609; 722, 724; 1014, 1015; 1052, 1054, 1055; 1220, 1222, 1223; 1388, 1390, 1391; 1409, 1411, 1412; 1420, 1421; 1457, 1459; 1812, 1813; 1905, 1907; 1947, 1949; 2043, 2044.
- ale 358, 360.
- ales 685, 686.
- all 114, 116, 117; 153, 154; 230, 231; 246, 248; 435, 437; 555, 557, 558; 776, 777; 1007, 1008; 1072, 1074; 1226, 1228; 1443, 1445; 1504, 1505; 1588, 1589; 1597, 1599; 1612, 1614, 1615; 1707, 1708; 1819, 1820; 1898, 1900.
- am 86, -an 88, 89. See -an.
- ame 132, 133; 589, 591; 713, 714; 785, -an 787; 862, -an 864; 1238, 1239; 1702, -an 1704.
- an 925, 927; 1395, 1397, 1398; 1518, 1519. See -am, -ame
- ane 2011, 2013, 2014.
- and 262, -ong 260; 370, 371; 1177, 1179. See -ang.
- ande 128, 130, 131; 1084, 1085; 1161, 1162; 1562, 1564; 1574, 1575; 1651, 1652; 1612, 1614; 1059, 1960.
- ape 524, 525; 1315, 1316.
- ard 601, 602.
- are 125, 126; 723, 725, 726; 807, 809, 810.
- arge 85, 87; 545, 546; 603, 605; 1632, 1634.
- arke 937, 938.
- arpe 400, 402.
- arre 554, 556.
- art 876, 878; 1040, 1042.
- ary 1446, 1447, -ory 1444.
- aryd 736, 738.
- as 274, 276; 611, 613, 614; 1065, 1067; 1339, -ase 1341, 1342; 1878, -ace 1880, 1881. See -ase, -ace.
- ase 314, 315; 461, 462; 513, 515, 516; 632, 634, 635. See -as.
- ases 58, 60, 61.
- ast 72, 74, 75; 127, 129.
- aste 1045, 1047, 1048.
- ate 27, 28; 422, 424, 425; 1483, 1484; 1546, 1547; 1639, 1641.
- ates 706, 707.
- aught 1231, 1232.
- aunce 244, 245; 335, 336; 398, 399; 407, 409; 442, 444; 650, 661; 797, 798; 835, 837, 838; 954, 956, 957; 989, 991, 992; 1094, 1096, 1097; 1147, 1148; 1374, 1376, 1377; 1430, 1432, 1433; 1450, 1452; 1507, 1500, 1510; 1508, 1600, 1601; 1660, 1662; 1714, 1715; 1835, 1837; 2003, 2005; 2060, 2062, 2063.
- aunge 1402, 1404, 1405.
- aungeth 2094, 2096.

-aunse 15, 17; 996, 998, 999.  
 -aunt 883, 885; 1254, 1256; 1294, 1295.  
 -auntyd 118, 119; 874, 875.  
 -ause 134, 136.  
 -aute 587, 588.  
 -ay 29, 31; 282, 284, 285; 296, 298, 299; 548, 550, 551; 666, 668; 715, 717; 727,  
     728; 729, 731; 743, 745; 813, 815; 958, 959; 965, 966; 970, 980; 1028, 1029;  
     1086, 1088; 1245, 1246; 1276, 1278, 1279; 1324, 1326; 1404, 1406; 1590,  
     1592; 1661, 1663, 1664; 1828, 1830; 1968, 1970.  
 -ayd 36, 38.  
 -ayde 164, -eyde 162; 207, -eyde 205.  
 -ayed 1998, -eyde 1996.  
 -ayes 692, 693.  
 -ayll 615, 616; 751, 753, 754; 1219, 1221; 1969, 1971, 1972.  
 -ayn 1507, 1508.  
 -ayne 1668, 1670, -eyne 1671. See -eyne.  
 -awe 559, 560; 1227, 1229, 1230.

## E

{-e (gen. =y) 121, 123, 124; 198, 200, 201; 253, 255; 271, -y 270; 457, 459,  
     460; 492, 494, 495; 510, 521; 552, 553; 617, 619; 650, 651; 772, 774, 775;  
     804, 805; 811, -ee 812; 828, 830, 831; 842, 844, 845; 910, 921, 922; 933,  
     935, 936; 1002, 1004; 1010, 1012, 1013; 1080, 1082, 1083; 1105, -ee 1106;  
     1261, 1263; 1280, 1281; 1320, 1330; 1410, 1418, 1419; 1423,  
     1425, 1426; 1700, 1701; 1800, 1802; 1868, 1869; 1920, 1928; 1945, 1946;  
     1980, 1981; 1994, 1995; 2017, 2019; ? 2038, 2040; 2057, 2058; 2067, 2069,  
     2070.  
 {-ee 365, 367; 505, 507; 905, 907; 1136, 1138, -e 1130; 1961, -e 1963.  
 -care 421, -ere 423.  
 -ecte 895, 896; 1847, 1848.  
 {-ede 286, -eede 287; 569, 571, 572; 755, 756; 832, 833; 1000, 1001; 1035, 1036;  
     1120, 1131, 1132; 1300, 1302, 1303; 1378, 1379.  
 {-eede 1023, 1025; 1583, 1585; 1815, 1817, 1818.  
 -ect 1064, -et 1063.  
 -eft 502, 504, 505.  
 {-elde 667, 669, 670; 932, 934; 1044, 1046; 1095, 1093 -eelde.  
 {-eclde 1093, -elde 1095.  
 {-ele 55, 56; 1026, 1027, -elee 1024; 2068, -ele 2066.  
 {-elee 1024, -ele 1026, 1027; 1037, 1038; 2066, -ele 2068.  
 -ell 30, 32, 33; 433, 434; 590, 592, 593; 1331, 1333; 1532, 1533.  
 -eme 1609, 1610.  
 -emes 1854, 1855.  
 -ence 44, 49, 47; 70, 77; 79, 81, 82; 97, 98; 174, 175; 228, 229, -ense 226; 456  
     458; 639, 641, 642; 645, 647; 814, 816, 817; 1135, 1137; 1103, 1105; 1430,  
     1438; 1490, 1491; 1611, 1613; 1803, 1805; 2001, 2002; 2025, -ens 2027,  
     2028; 2106, 2107. See -ens, -ense.  
 -ende 737, 739, 740; 1023, 1024; 1065, 1066; 1777, -ynde 1778; 1708, 1709; 1020,  
     1022, -ynde, 1023; 1031, 1032. See -ynde.

- { -ene 982, 984, 985; 1198, 1200; 1584, 1586, 1587.  
 { -eene 275, -ene 277, 278; 2045, 2047.
- ens 2027, 2028, -ence 2025.
- ense 226, -ence 228, 229; 653, 655, 656; 1247, 1249. See -ence.
- ent 23, 25, 26; 113, 115; 139, 140; 160, 161; 170, 172, 173; 247, 249, 250; 289, 291, 292; 415, 417, 418; 449, 451; 741, 742; 792, 794; 827, 829; 1003, 1005, 1006; 1002, -ente 1091; 1107, 1109; 1140, 1141; 1157, 1159, 1160; 1175, 1176; 1304, 1306, 1307; 1427, 1428; 1465, 1467, 1468; 1553, 1554; 1674, 1676; 1749, 1750; 1763, 1764; 1829, 1831, 1832; 1903, 1904; 2036, 2037.
- entes 839, 840; 909, 910; 918, 920.
- epe 107, 109, 110; 1255, 1257, 1258; 1296, 1298.
- ept 510, 511; 944, 945; 1682, 1684, 1685.
- er 71, 73; 163, -ere 165, -eere 166; 547, 549. See -eere.
- erde 498, -eryd 500; 625, 627, 628. See -eryd.
- { -ere 50, 52; 93, 95, 96; 155, 157; 183, 185; 197, 199; 323, 325; 394, 396, 397; 423, -eare 421; 443, 445, 446; 541, 543, 544; 748, 749; 806, 808; 884, 887, -eere 886; 888, 889; 960, 962; 1128, 1130; 1233, 1235; 1541, 1543; 1556, 1558, 1559; 1602, 1603; 1626, 1628, 1629; 1742, 1743; 1933, 1935; 2004, 2006, 2007; 2020, 2030; 2081, 2083, 2084. See -eare.
- { -eere 166, -ere 165; 597, 599, -ere, 600; 1616, -yre 1617; 1653, -ere 1655. See -yre.
- eeres 905, -ers 907, -eres 908.
- ers 674, 676, 677; 680, 682; 681, 683, 684; 688, 690, 691; 695, 697, 698; 702, 704, 705; 907, -eeres 905, -eres 908; 911, -eres 913; 1696, -eres 1698, 1699.
- erse 405, 406.
- ert 468, 469; 503, 504; 1170, 1172; 1266, 1267; 1591, 1593, 1594; 1786, 1788; 1843, 1845, 1846.
- erte 1451, 1453, 1454.
- erue 1408, 1410.
- eryd 500, -erde 498.
- es 391, 392; 881, 882; 902, 903; 1066, 1068, 1069; 1215, -esse 1213; 1380, 1382; 1640, 1642, 1643.
- ese 232, 234; 237, 238; 1752, 1754, 1755.
- esse 8, 10; 184, 186, 187; 240, 242, 243; 254, 256, 257; 303, 305, 306; 534, 536, 537; 1059, 1061, 1062; 1213, -es 1215, 1216; 1262, 1264, 1265; 1385, 1386; 1492, 1494; 1511, 1512; 1633, 1635, 1636; 1716, 1718; 1941, 1943, 1944.
- eson (or on) 1250, 1260.
- esshe 2080, 2082.
- est 223, 224; 342, 343; 573, 574; 820, 822; 2032, 2034, -este 2035.
- este 478, 480, 481; 1056, -yste 1057; 2035, -est 2032, 2034. See -yste.
- et 167, 168; 188, 189; 251, 252; 309, 311; 317, 319, 320; 337, 339; 384, 385; 1063, -eet 1064; 1154, 1155; 1184, 1186; 1654, -ete 1656, 1657; 1675, 1677, 1678; 1891, 1893. See -eet, -ete.
- ete 212, 214, 215; 239, 241; 344, 346; 410, 420; 527, 529, 530; 566, 567; 1030, 1032; 1287, 1288; 1332, 1334, 1335; 1656, 1657, -et 1654. See -et.
- ette 604, 606, 607; 1462, 1463.
- ettys 1605, -ety 1607. See -ety.
- ety 1607, -ettys 1605. See -ettys.
- eue 13, 14; 429, 431, 432; 520, 522, 523; 1679, 1680; 2031, 2033.

- euer (or er) 1203, 1204; 1973, 1974.  
 -euhn 821, 823, 824.  
 -ew 582, 584; 961, 963, 964; 1070, 1071; 1123, -u 1121; 1364, 1365; 1373, 1375;  
   1506, 1508; 2046, 2048, 2049. See -u.  
 -ewes 609, 700.  
 -ewre 930, -ure 931.  
 -ey 156, -ay 158, 159; 378, -y 377; 623, -y 622; 873, -y 872, 870; 1188, -y  
   1187, 1185; 1630, -y 1631; 1728, -y 1729; 1856, 1858. See -y.  
 -eyde 162, -ayde 164; 205, -ayde 207, 208; 596, 598; 1990, -ayed 1998. See  
   -ayde, -ayed.  
 -eyn 62, 63; 140, 147; 176, 178; 561, 563; 744, 746, 747; 1359, 1361.  
 -eyne 37, 39, 40; 111, 112; 610, -eygne 612; 1156, 1158; 1581, 1582; 1671, -ayne,  
   1670; 1808, 1810, 1811; 1900, 1907; 2085, 2086. See -ayne.  
 -eyngth 907, 969.  
 -eynt 78, 80; 258, 259; 350, 361, 362; 1644. -eynte 1645; 1793, 1795.  
 -eynte 1645, -eynt 1644.  
 -eynyd 1345, 1347.  
 -eynyd 48, 49.  
 -ext 1502, -exte 1500.  
 -exte 1502, -ext 1502.

## Y, I. (E).

- y 34, 35; 104, 105; 148, 150; 202, 203; 268, 270, -e 271; 281, 283; 302, 304;  
   330, 332; 377, -ey 378; 380, 382, 383; 401, 403, 404; 450, 452, 453; 493, 495;  
   485, 487, 488; 594, I 595; 622, -ey 623; 629, 630; 638, 640; 640, 648, 649;  
   652, 654; 657, 658; 660, 662, 663; 705, 707, 708; 800, 802, 803; 841, 843;  
   846, 847; 848, 850; 853, 854; 855, 857; 867, 868; 869, 871; 870, 872, -ey 873;  
   975, 977, 978; 1009, 1011; 1021, 1022; 1073, 1075, 1076; 1171, 1173, 1174;  
   1185, 1187, -ey 1188; 1189, 1190; 1280, 1291; 1346, 1348, I 1349; 1458;  
   1460, 1461; 1485, 1486; 1493, 1495, I 1496; 1513, 1515; 1534, 1536; 1549;  
   1551, 1552; 1570, 1572, 1573; 1631, -ey 1630; 1680, 1691, 1692; 1717, 1719,  
   -uy 1720; 1729, -ey 1728; 1787, 1789, 1790; 1822, 1825, I 1824; 1840, 1841;  
   1989, 1991; 2030, 2041, 2042; 2064, I 2065; 2005, 2097, 2098; 2102, 2104,  
   2105. See -e, -ey, -uy.  
 -yce 825, -yse 826; 863, -yse 865, 866. See -yse.  
 -yde 216, 217; 288, 290; 324, 326, 327; 331, 333, 334; 349, 350; 470, 472; 624,  
   626; 664, 665; 716, 718, 719; 793, 795, 796; 801, 803, 804; 920, 928, 929;  
   940, 942, 943; 981, 983; 1283, 1285, 1286; 1400, 1501; 1525, 1526; 1555,  
   1557.  
 -ydyd 946, -uydyd 948; 1765, 1767. See -uydyd.  
 -yeth 2010, 2012.  
 -yght 373, 375, 376; 480, 490; 750, 752; 759, -ute 757; 778, 780; 972, 973; 986,  
   987; 993, 994; 1033, 1034, -yte 1031; 1037, 1039; 1112, -yt 1113; 1100, 1201,  
   1202; 1307, 1370, -yte 1369; 1381, 1383, 1384; 1392, 1393; 1471, 1473;  
   1476, 1477; 1801, -yte 1803, 1804; 2078, 2079. See -yt, -yte, -ute.  
 -yghtes, 710, -ytes 708. See -ytes.  
 -ygne 1224, -yne 1225; 1441, 1442. See -yne.  
 -yk 856, 858, 859.

- ykes 678, 679.  
 -yll 120, 122; 575, 577; 916, 917; 1058, 1060; 1079, 1081; 1990, 1992, 1993.  
 -yme 953, 955.  
 -yn 1040, 1050; 1857, 1859, 1860.  
 -ynde 64, 66; 393, 395; 512, 514; 631, 633; 1343, 1344; 1387, 1389; 1542, 1544, 1545; 1647, 1649, 1650; 1756, 1757; 1778, -ende 1777; 1784, 1785; 1923, -ende 1922. See -ende.  
 -yne 265, 266; 372, 374; 1225, -yngne 1224; 2018, 2020, 2021.  
 -yng 267, 269; 1366, 1368; 1528, 1530, 1531; 1535, 1537, 1538; 1618, 1620.  
 -ynges 687, 689.  
 -ynke 2052, 2054.  
 -ynne 947, 949, 950; 1997, 1999, 2000.  
 -yre 1617, -eere 1616; 1870, 1872. See -eere.  
 -yreth 135, 137, 138.  
 -ys 106, 108; 877, 879, 880; 1310, 1312.  
 -yse 16, 18, 19; 225, 227; 447, 448; 508, 570; 826, -yce 825; 865, -yce 863; 1115, 1117, 1118; 1352, 1354; 1780, 1782, 1783; 1962, 1964, 1965. See -yce.  
 -yst 1297, 1299, 1300.  
 -yste 1057, -este 1056.  
 -ysyd 482, 483.  
 -yt 191, -et 193, -yte 194; 1113, -yght, 1112. See -et, -yte, -yght.  
 -yte 211, 213; 1031, -yght 1033, 1034; 1369, -yght 1370; 1005, 1007, 1008; 1803, -yght 1801; 1814, 1816. See -yght.  
 -ytes 701, 703; 708, -yghtes 710.  
 -yue 517, 518; 939, 941; 1849, 1851.  
 -yues 20, 21.

## O

- o 22, 24; 41, 42; 51, 53, 54; 142, 144, 145; 160, 171; 195, 196; 218, 220; 295, 297; 471, 473, 474; 490, 497; 1210, 1211; 1248, 1250, 1251; 1322, 1323; 1353, 1355, 1356; 1527, 1529; 1539, 1540; 1563, -oo 1565, 1566.  
 -oo 41, -o 42; 92, 94; 1505, -o 1503.  
 -ood 307, 308; 1126, 1127; 1311, 1313, 1314; 1422, 1424; 1569, 1571.  
 -oode 540, 542; 799, 801; 1038, 1040, 1041.  
 -oddy 491, 493.  
 -oft 99, 101.  
 -ook 1142, 1144; 1455, 1456; 1724, 1726, 1727.  
 { -oke 181, 182.  
 { -ooke 1303, 1305; 1885, 1887, 1888.  
 -olde 387, 389, 390; 428, 430; 1766, 1768, 1769; 1821, 1823; 1934, 1936, 1937; 1983, 1985, 1986; 2050, 2061; 2073, 2075.  
 -oole 1394, 1396; 1658, 1659; 1952, 1953.  
 -ome 190, 192; 1336, -one 1337; 1406, 1407. See -one.  
 { -on 43, 45; 90, 91; 636, 637; 643, 644; 834, 836; 849, 851, 852; 974, 976; 988, 990; 1103, -owne 1101; 1108, 1110, 1111; 1143, 1145, 1146; 1178, 1180, -own  
 { 1181; 1205, 1207; 1301, 1302; 1413, 1414; 1420, 1431; 1619, 1621, 1622; 1646, 1648; 1681, 1683; 1721, 1722; 1737, 1739; 1744, 1746; 1754, 1755; 1772, 1774; 1833, 1834; 1842, 1844; 1864, 1866, 1867; 1910, 1911; 1913,

- oon 1915, 1916; 1919, 1921; 1975, 1977; 2008, 2009; 2022, 2023; 2053, 2055,  
 2056; 2101, 2003. See -eson, -own.  
 -oon 440, 441; 1217, -om 1218; 1667, -on 1669; 1759, 1761, 1762; 1805, 1806; 1836,  
 1838, -on 1830. See -om, -on.  
 -onde 1712, -ounde 1710; 1735, -ounde 1736. See -ounde.  
 -one 720, 721; 779, 781, 782; 923, 924; 1337, -ome 1338; 1745, 1747, 1748; 1839,  
 -oon 1838. See -ome.  
 -ong 730, 732, 733; 1269, 1271, 1272.  
 -onne I, 3; 1806, 1807.  
 -oony 499, 501, 502.  
 -ophres 272, 273.  
 -orde 6, 7; 1252, 1253; 1434, 1435; 2015, 2016.  
 -oorde 1240, 1242.  
 { -ore 149, 151, 152; 338, 340, 341; 771, 773; 968, 970, 971; 1308, 1309; 1472, 1474,  
   1475; 1604, 1606; 1704, 1707, -ore 1700; 1871, 1873, 1874; 1892, 1894, 1895.  
 { -oore 1701, -ore 1702; 2074, 2076, 2077.  
 -ores 673, 675.  
 -orn 818, 819.  
 -orne 280, -urne 279; 293, 294. See -urne.  
 -ornyd 1110, 1120.  
 -ort 65, 67, 68; 204, 206; 531, 532; 671, 672.  
 -orte 1150, 1152, 1153; 1486, 1488, 1489.  
 -ory 1444, -ary 1446, 1447. See -ary.  
 -ose 1576, 1578.  
 -osse 1505, 1506.  
 -oost 704, 706; 783, 784; 951, 952; 1192, -ost 1194, 1195.  
 -oot 620, 621, -ote 618; 1350, 1351.  
 -othe 2002, 2003.  
 -ooth 420, 427; 1338, 1340.  
 -other 1807, 1809.  
 -ought 141, 143; 200, 210; 263, 264, -out 261; 412, 413; 526, 528; 786, 788,  
   789; 1051, 1053; 1106, 1107; 1234, 1236, 1237; 1478, 1480; 1625, 1627;  
   1672, 1673; 1882, 1883; 2050, 2051.  
 -oun 2087, 2089.  
 -ound 506, -ownd 508, 509; 533, 535; 1042, 1043; 1521, 1523, 1524.  
 -ounde 1690, -ownde 1688; 1709, 1711; 1710, -onde 1712, 1713; 1736, -onde 1735  
   See -onde, -ownde.  
 -our 404, 406, 407; 570, 578, 579; 734, 735; 1078, -owre 1077; 1100, 1102; 1206  
   1208, 1209; 1290, 1292, 1293; 1850, -oure 1852, 1853. See -owre.  
 -ours 700, 711, 712; 807, 809; 904, 906; 912, -oures 914, 915; 1016, -oures 1018;  
   1182, 1183; 1357, 1358; 1577, 1578, 1580.  
 -oures 322, -owres 321; 694, 699; 914, -ours 912; 1018, -ours 1016. See -ours,  
   -owres.  
 -ous 408, 410, 411; 700, 701; 808, 900, 901.  
 -out 261, -ought 203, 204; 430, 438, 439; 1437, -owte 1439, 1440; 1470, 1481,  
   1482; 1930, -oute 1920. See -ought, -owte.  
 -oute 310, 312, 313; 386, 388; 758, -owte 760, 761; 1017, 1019, 1020; 1273, 1274;  
   1927, 1929, 1930. See -owte.

- ow 762, 763; 1149, 1151; 1164, 1166, 1167; 1191, 1193; 1241, -owe 1243, 1244; 1317, 1319; 1371, 1372; 1401, 1403; 1954, 1956; 2024, 2026.  
 -owe 484, 486; 1243, -ow 1241. See -ow.  
 -own 1181, -on 1180.  
 -ownd 508, -ound 506. See -ound.  
 -ownde 1688, -unde 1689. See -unde.  
 -owne 379, 381; 1101, -on 1103, 1104. See -on.  
 -owre 1077, -our 1078. See -our.  
 -owres 321, -oures 322. See -oures.  
 -owte 760, -oute 758; 1087, 1089, 1090; 1122, 1124, 1125; 1318, 1320, 1321; 1439, -out 1437; 1801, 1802; 1924, 1925; 1948, 1950, 1951; 1976, 1978, 1979.

## U

- u 1121, -ew 1123. See -ew.  
 -ude 890, 892; 1703, 1705, 1706.  
 -ure 57, 59; 83, 84; 100, 102, 103; 363, 364; 414, 416; 454, 455; 477, 479; 860, 861; 931, -ewre 930; 1268, 1270; 1325, 1327, 1328; 1448, 1449; 1514, 1516, 1517; 1520, 1522; 1693, 1694; 1723, 1725; 1770, 1771; 1773, 1775, 1776; 1877, 1879; 1884, 1886; 2088, 2090, 2091. See -ewre.  
 -urre 328, 329.  
 -urne 279, -orne 280.  
 -us 177, 179, 180; 1168, 1169; 1469, 1470; 1938, 1939.  
 -use 1917, 1918; 1955, 1957, 1958.  
 -ust 1098, 1099; 1275, 1277.  
 -usyd 1390, 1400.  
 -ute 757 -yght 759. See -yght.  
 -uy 1720, -y 1719.  
 -uydyd 948, -ydyd 946.

2. Alliteration is a marked feature of the verse. As is well known, the usage of combining alliteration and end-rime, which became conspicuous in western and northern England about the middle of the fourteenth century, grew in favor through the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, reaching its highest popularity in Scotland during the second half of the fifteenth century (v. *Scottish Allit. Poems*, ed. by Amours in Scot. Text Soc.). The alliterative phrases record, clearly enough, the influence of the Old-English method of verse. In this poem alliteration occurs chiefly in formal phrases, as an ornament of the verse, rarely having any constructive significance. Lydgate followed no fixed method, though of course accent most often determines the phrase. For Chaucer's usage consult Ten Brink, *Ch. Sp.* p. 196, *et seq.*, and *The Alliteration of Chaucer*, a thesis by Dr. C. F. McClumphay (Univ. of Minn.). I cite a few of the most notable instances:

4: sytting all solytary alone besyde a lake. 5: musyng on a maner how that I myght make. 13: so leyde I me downe my dysse to reue. 35: ys in a lytlyll corner callyd Fantasy. 66: roote and rynde. 127: boystous blast. 201: flame of fyre. 270: full sad and wyse he semyd sykerly. 303: worldly wysdom. 320: hyr gowne was of gawdy grene chamelet. 345: in curas clad. 354: clad in clustres. 372: colour crystallyne. 379: copyr crowne. 382: beames bryght. 425: deuyll's date. 487: doolenor destyny. 501: boody, blood and boony. 557: walewyng with hys rawes. 558: make and marre. 631: slowthe so sleepy. 673: bosters, braggars and brybore. 675: shamefull shakerles, soleyn shaueldores. 684: malycious murmurers. 688: robbers, revuers, rauenouse ryfelers. 690: marrers of maters and money makers. 806: roody as a roose. 848: refuse of rychesse. 890: perpetuell prestes. 902: fysshers of fowles. 907: on peynfull poore pteuous compassioners. 912: hooly heremytes. 913: monasteriall monkies. 996: chaunger of the chaunce. 1160: peyne perpetuell. 1362: wylde wantones wede. 1603: coloryd crystall clere. 1743: feynyd fables. 1886: daryng as a dastard. 2071-2: Try out the corne cleene from the chaff And then may ye say ye have a sure staff.

---

## CHAPTER V.

## THE RIME AND THE FINAL e.

See Paul's *Grund*, II, p. 1034, sec. 24.—The language and metre of the poem seem to be in such confusion that evidence either for or against the pronunciation of the final *e* is rarely conclusive. So far as I am able to judge from a study of the metre and of the riming words the final *e* is quite generally mute. Double forms were evidently permissible, especially in words of Old-English origin. Still the riming words show a very considerable loss of the final *e*, and a consequent change in poetic phraseology, as compared with the *Chorl and Bird* and the *Temple of Glas*, which conform much more closely to the phraseology of Chaucer. On this latter evidence I should argue for the later date of the *Assembly of Gods*. For while a skillful copyist, by the addition of monosyllabic words, might make the measure run without the *e*'s, he would not change the riming words themselves.

1. A study of the common riming words from Chaucer to Spenser will illustrate the changes in operation during the fifteenth century which affected the final *e* sound. It will be observed that the adverbial suffix -ly (O. E. *lic*), which in Chaucer<sup>1</sup> and contemporary works rimed only with itself, -y or the pronoun I, rimes in Lyd-

<sup>1</sup>The *Romaunt* has cases of -y and -ye rime; but the date of the MS. is late, c. 1450 (Skeat).

gate's *Assembly of Gods*, King James' *Quair* and in other poems succeeding these, with endings of Romance nouns such as company (O. F. companie, M. L. compagnia), melody (O. F. melodie, L. L. melodia, Gk. μελῳδία), etc., and of infinitives as testify, multiply, spy, etc. The usage of riming the ending -y and -ye became customary before the middle of the fifteenth century. Chaucer rimes regularly -yē with -yē. Thus compayne rimes with maystrie, ielousye, hye, espye, envye, hostelrie, dayesye, etc.; ielousye with maystrie, folye, espye, maladye, etc. So -ly rimes regularly with itself, -y or I. Thus I rimes with properly, utterly, verrailly, trewely, wikkedly, boldely, certeynly, by; utterly rimes with trewely, esely, sikerly; why rimes with casually. Chaucer has no exception to these rules.

Gower in his *Confessio Amantis* (1386–1393), Hoccleve in his *Minor Poems* (c. 1425) have Chaucer's usage very strictly. I find no instance in Lydgate's *Temple of Glas* (c. 1403) of the -y -ye rime. In the *Assembly of Gods*, however, the rule is no longer maintained. Thus company rimes with pleasauntly 380, feruently 382, melody 401, ly 404, chyualry 463, by 663, Apostasy 977, vyctory 1190, Sodechy 1549, Sophony 1551. Ey rimes with envy 622, Pawmestry 870, deny 872, fly 1185, sodenly 1187, foly 1631, generally 1729. Hy rimes with testyfy 104, thereby 1461, certeynly 1495, I 1496, gloryosly 1572, by 1570, naturally 1691, glory 1841, magnyfy 2102, Mary 2105. Multyply rimes with indyfferency 846, deyfy 1719. Comonly rimes with Fantasy 35. Courtesy rimes with innocency 841. Memory rimes with glory 848, story 1513. Victory rimes with party 1009, glory 1789, occupy 1787. Spy rimes with pruyvly 1021, cry with sodeynly 1075 and myghtyly 1073; stody with espy 1989; occupy with testyfy 452 and deny 453.

In Lydgate and Burgh's *Secrees* (c. 1446) the latter usage obtains. The final e is there rarely sounded (Steele, *Intro. to Sec.* p. xx. § xvii.). Applye rimes with partye 1516, fantasye 303. Victorey rimes with pryncipally 2181, prudently 2182, hastely 2445, remedy 2448. Remedy rimes with hevyly 1735, specially 2008. Hastily rimes with denye 1846. Partye rimes with streyghtlye 2131. Mallady rimes with specially 1700; foly with discretly 2281, angry 2652; lecherrye with fynally 2503 and velony 2504.

The change had already been accomplished in the *Quair* (1423) of King James I., who rimed armory with contynually, ielousye with melancholye and quhy (N. E. why), philosophye with properly, partye

- with I, quhy with companye, iclousye, folye, onely, I with humility, gye, suplye, etc.

In the *Pastime of Pleasure* (c. 1506), the work of Stephen Hawes, the pupil of Lydgate, and in Spenser's poems and in other sixteenth century works, the new usage is completely established. The period of transition would seem to be from about 1415 to 1450. Lydgate's own works exhibit the change, and very likely his poems can be approximately dated by reference to his treatment of this -y rime.

2. *The infinitives among the riming words* present the phenomena given in the following word list. The inflectional ending has disappeared in most cases. It is maintained somewhat in verbs of English origin but is almost completely lost in verbs of Romance origin. I use ē to indicate the conjectural pronunciation of the infinitive ending. In the table the first word in each series is the infinitive, which is followed by the words with which it rimes:

(a) *Of Teutonic Origin.*

- abydē: wyde 664; tyde 718; ryde (inf.) 710; pryde (obl. sng.) 928; syde (obl. sng.) 920; gyde (inf.) 793; hyde (inf.) 894.  
 arysē: iustyse (obl. sng.) 18; sylogyse (inf.) 10.  
 astert: hert (obl. sng.) 408.  
 awakē: take (inf.) 1015; shake (inf.) 2044.  
 be: perplexyte (obl. sng.) 200; se (inf.) 201; me 255; pyte (obl. sng.) 921; vnyte (obl. sng.) 910.  
 beware: care (obl. sng.) 126.  
 blyn: syn (inf.) 1857; wyn (inf.) 1850.  
 borow: sorow 1166; folow (inf.) 1164.  
 bow: how 2026.  
 call: fall 1008; wall 1898.  
 crepē: depe (obl. pl.) 100; kepe (inf.) 107.  
 deelē: wele (obl. sng.) 2068.  
 do: so 144; to 145.  
 dwell: tell (inf.) 585; rebell 583.  
 fall: shall 231; all 246.  
 farē: care (obl. sng.) 800; bare 807.  
 feelē: yele 1026; dele (obl. sng.) 1027.  
 fet: basket (obl. sng.) 167; met 1154; get 1678.  
 fly: sodenly 1187; ev (obl. sng.) 1188.  
 folow: sorow 1166; borow (inf.) 1167.  
 forsakē: take (inf.) 1052; make (inf.) 1055.  
 foryetē: entrete (inf.) 241.  
 foryeuē: lene (obl. sng.) 520; myscheue (inf.) 523.  
 fulfill: wyll (obl. sng.) 575.  
 fyght: myght 993.  
 fyndē: rynde (obl. sng.) 66; behynde 514.

gete: conterfete (inf.) 212: entrete (inf.) 214: whete 1334.  
go: fro 24.  
herē: fere (obl. sng.) 52 (nere 390; Omere 397): daungere (obl. sng.) 96: pryonere  
93: apere 157: plesere 197: offycere (obl. sng.) 446.  
hy: redely 767: ny 768.  
hydē: syde (obl. sng.) 891: abyde (inf.) 893.  
kepē: depe (obl. pl.) 100: crepe (inf.) 110: wepe (inf.) 1257: slepe (inf.) 1258.  
lerē: geere (obl. sng.) 886: were 884.  
lowte: rowte (obl. sng.) 1087: dawte 1090: abowte 1924.  
ly: company 403; melody (obl. sng.) 401: Pyromancy 869.  
make: lake (obl. sng.) 4: take (inf.) 2.  
markē: parke (obl. sng.) 938.  
metē: shete (obl. sng.) 420.  
mornē: Saturne 270.  
mys: wys 870: thys 877.  
nede: spede (inf.) 571: dede (obl. sng.) 572.  
ouerse: meyne (obl. sng.) 774: see (inf.) 775.  
rydē: wyde 626: tyde 718: abyde (inf.) 716.  
say: day 1830: deley (obl. sng.) 1858.  
se: perplexyte (obl. sng.) 200: be (inf.) 198: meyne 774: ambyguyte 1012: lyberte  
1013: benygnyte 1426.  
shakē: awake (inf.) 2043.  
slepē: wepe (inf.) 1257: kepe (inf.) 1255.  
spedē: nede (inf.) 569: dede (obl. sng.) 572.  
steuyn: heuyn (obl. sng.) 823: senyn 821.  
syn: wyn (inf.) 1859: blyn (inf.) 1860.  
syt: yet 193: abyte 194.  
takē: lake (obl. sng.) 4: make (inf.) 5: awake (inf.) 1014: forsake (inf.) 1054.  
tell: dwell 32: hell (obl. sng.) 33: fell (obl. pl.) 434: rebell 583.  
wepē: kepe (inf.) 1255: slepe (inf.) 1258.  
wynne: ynne 949: synne 950: syn (inf.) 1857: blyn (inf.) 1860: thynne 1997:  
theryn 1050.  
wythstandē: hande (obl. sng.) 1084.

(b) *Of Romance Origin.*

acorde: monacorde (obl. sng.) 7.  
apelē: wele (obl. sng.) 56.  
apperē: herberg (obl. sng.) 1935: fere (obl. sng.) 2006: here (inf.) 2004.  
asaute: defaute (obl. sng.) 587.  
asay: day 979: may 1278: nay 1276.  
assent: content 172: iugement (obl. sng.) 170.  
aualē: pale (obl. sng.) 358.  
auaunce: puruyaunce 956: daunce (obl. sng.) 957.  
auowē: bowe (inf.) 486.  
carpe: harpe (obl. sng.) 400.  
cese: dyscrese (inf.) 232: doutlese 1754: prese (obl. sng.) 1755.  
chastyse: dispise (inf.) 448.  
compleyn: tweyn (obl. pl.) 146.

conclude: multitude 890.  
 confound: drownd 508; fownd 509.  
 counterfete: entrete (inf.) 214; gete (inf.) 215.  
 cry: sodeynly 1075; myghtyly 1073.  
 daunce: penaunce (obl. sng.) 1148.  
 deny: testify (inf.) 452; occupy (inf.) 450; Pawmestry 870; ey (obl. sng.) 873.  
 depart: cart (obl. sng.) 878.  
 depryue: lyue 518.  
 dereygne: cheyne (obl. sng.) 610.  
 defyfy: multyly 1717; guy (inf.) 1720.  
 dyscrese: cese (inf.) 234.  
 dyspysye: chastyse (inf.) 447.  
 dysusé: muse (inf.) 1917.  
 endure: mesure (obl. sng.) 102; nature (obl. sng.) 100; creature (obl. sng.) 2088;  
     sure 2091.  
 enhaunse: remembraunce 998; chaunse (obl. sng.) 996.  
 enlumyne: disclypnye (obl. sng.) 2018; Doctryne 2021.  
 entrete: counterfete (inf.) 212; gete (inf.) 215; foryete 239; banket 1654; gete  
     (obl. sng.) 1057.  
 escape: iape (obl. sng.) 525.  
 eschew: Vertew (obl. sng.) 963; sew (inf.) 964.  
 espy: stody (obl. sng.) 1001.  
 exorte: reporte 1486; sorte 1489.  
 fade: shade (obl. sng.) 60.  
 greuë: leue (obl. sng.) 420; meue (inf.) 431.  
 gydë: tyde 795; abyde (inf.) 796.  
 magnyfy: hy 2104; Mary 2105.  
 menteyn: peyn 746; ageyn 744.  
 meuë: leue (obl. sng.) 420; greuc (inf.) 432; sleue (obl. sng.) 2033.  
 multyly: guy (inf.) 1720; deyfy (inf.) 1719.  
 musé: disvse (inf.) 1918.  
 myscheue: leue (obl. sng.) 520; foryeue (inf.) 522.  
 occupy: testyfy (inf.) 452; deny (inf.) 453; hy (obl. sng.) 1173; vycotry (obl. sng.) 1174.  
 oppresse: heunesse 10; neuerthelesse 1059; duresse (obl. sng.) 1002.  
 peruert: hert 1780; desert (obl. sng.) 1843; smert 1845.  
 promyse: wyse (obl. sng.) 225.  
 rebell: tell 502; well 503.  
 recompense: audyence (obl. sng.) 1249.  
 refusë: diffuse 1055; vse (inf.) 1058.  
 reherse: warse 405.  
 relenë: sleue (obl. sng.) 14.  
 repent: went 417; inconuenyent (obl. sng.) 415.  
 resorte: conforte (obl. sng.) 1152; porte (obl. sng.) 1153.  
 sew: Vertew (obl. sng.) 963; eschew (inf.) 961.  
 slogyse: iustyse (obl. sng.) 18; aryse (inf.) 10.  
 tary: sanctuary 1446; crysmatory 1444.  
 testyfy: hy 105; occupy (inf.) 450; deny (inf.) 453.  
 vsë: diffuse 1055; refuse (inf.) 1057.

## CHAPTER VI.

## THE LANGUAGE.

*A. Vocabulary.*

The modern character of Lydgate's language has often been remarked. Warton long ago gave his judgment to the effect "that Lydgate made considerable additions to those amplifications of our language in which Chaucer, Gower and Occleve led the way; and that he is the first of our writers whose style is clothed with that perspicuity in which the English phraseology appears at this day to an English reader" (*Hist. of Eng. Poet.*, II., 270). The influence of French and Latin is more apparent in his vocabulary than in that of any other East Midland writer (v. *Dict. Natl. Biog.*, XXXIV., p. 310; Skeat *Prin. Engl. Ety.*, II., ch. viii). The *Assembly of Gods* is especially rich in words of Romance origin, and, as compared with contemporary writings, in words of recent adoption from the French. The poem is therefore especially helpful in tracing the gradual assimilation of foreign words into the language. In the Prolog to the *Canterbury Tales* in 303 words in the first 42 lines, Chaucer used 263 native English words, leaving 13 per cent. of foreign words. In 84 lines of the *Assembly of Gods*, of 669 words, the total number employed, 153, or nearly 23 per cent., are foreign: of the 305 different words used in the same lines, 107 are of foreign origin. As Lydgate was popular long in the reign of Elizabeth, his service in naturalizing the foreign vocabulary was considerable. It will be seen that the number of obsolete words is comparatively small, the proportion of such words being less than in Chaucer or Wyclif or Pecock (Lee, *Dict. Natl. Biog.*).

*B. Grammar.*

Lydgate's grammar has been well treated by Dr. Schick in his Introduction to the *Temple of Glas* (chap. vi. p. lxiii). This MS., being of a late date, can aid but little in the construction of Lydgate's own speech. In the main, it is probable that Lydgate's phonological and inflexional system did not differ much from that of Chaucer. There was, however, in the case of Lydgate a much less certain use of inflexional endings. In the present MS. the pronunciation of many endings is purely conjectural, the metre, owing to its irregularity, being seldom conclusive. The language

is seen to be in a state of greatest confusion about the year 1450. I note below a few of the grammatical forms of this text.

I. Declension. Nouns. *In Substantives of English origin, the final e of the sng. nom. is maintained in some cases:* tymē 137, 1751; namē 132; erthē 535. *Inorganic e occurs in* frendē 1798, 1807; wytte 1887. *Genitives have regularly the endings (e)s, ēs, ys:* whalēs 1535; foēs 1126; feldȳs 1451: the genitive form ladyes is found in 1178.

*The dative and accusative maintain the ē in* crabbē 1; ērthe 67, 1627; tymē 69; hedē 271 (sykerly) 286, 356, 384 (perhaps hede 379); tydē 334; feldē 959; endē 1799; sonnē 1896; tonnē 1897; tylthē 1710; and others. *Plurals commonly end in (e)s, ēs, ys;* other plurals are found, as deere 65, 68; thyng 1064; eyen 220; men 759; foōn 1762; chyldren 1659.

*In Substantives of Romance origin the final e in the sng. nom. is found in only a few cases:* hoostē 1124; bandē 1162; cherē 375; gownē 320. *The genitives end regularly in (e)s, ēs.* With proper names hys is sometimes used to indicate the genitive, as Vertew hys men 1072; Vyce hys quarrell 1055. *The dative and accusative are most often without endings, though a final ē occurs in* pesē 238; charē 792; scorgē 1170; scoole 1396, 1659. *Plurals are regularly found in (e)s, ēs, ys.*

II. *The Adjectives are generally without case endings.* The final ē appears, however, in all cases, sng. and pl.: as nom. sng. foulē, dyummē, 313; oldē 390, 1749; pl. oldē 294; in oblique cases sng., derkē 310; crystallynē 372; rewdē 438; foulē 648; hoolē 1172; pl. sage 389; blakē 1412.

III. *The Pronouns have the common M. E. forms;* ye is used as singular in 32, 95, as plural in 150; she is found in 378, se in 376; hit occurs regularly; theym is used in 48, 415, hem in 66, 126; her (their) is used in 47, 65, 123, 867, and regularly. The indefinite som, without ending, occurs in 865, 1196, 1198, 1199. For relatives, which that and who (rare), are used; by hem that lyues 20: he that 21; poetes whyche 1743: [he] who 769.

IV. *Adverbs are found with endings e, es or ys, ly and without endings:* sonē 36, 461, 721, 1345; while 181, 72; ferre 1627; newē 562; nedȳs 21, 1372; nedēs 1245; ellēs 33, 1033; ellȳs 1614, 1385; eftsonēs 1007.

V. *Conjugation of Verbs.* The formation of the tenses of the verbs, strong and weak, is the same as in Chaucer. *Infinitives end*

*in e*, though perhaps more often they are without endings, as fall 230, riming with shall; syt 191 riming with yet; fly 1185 riming with sodenly; bow 2024 riming with how; tell 30 riming with hell, etc. *The third person, indicative, present, has regularly the ending eth, eth.* *The northern es is found in two places:* dryues 21, manaces 61 (*in pl.* lynes 20). *The past participle is without a prefix ge-, i- or y-; the strong verbs end commonly in en and e, the weak in yd, ed, t:* knowēn 1141; beholdyn 1866; takēn 501; takē 59, 267, 547, 722, 725; tane 2013; brokē 182; spoke 181; ronnē 1; drevēn 1080; cropyñ 1953; ouerthrow 1149 rimes with know (*inf.*) and 1191 with low. The form beeene occurs in 2047 riming with seene, also bene 420, 1343, ben 627, byn 1798, be 115, 298, 460; bee 1136. So occur the forms goon 757, go 1396; done 48, 563, doon 84, do 195, 1248 (riming with lo), 496, ; seene 545, seyne 1671.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

## THE POEM.

A. LITERARY ANALYSIS.<sup>1</sup>

A. *Introduction (stanzas 1-5).* The time: when Phœbus had nearly finished his course in the Crab. The place: I was sitting alone beside a lake. The theme: musing how I might make Reason and Sensuality to accord. The framework of the action: a dream. The director of the dream: Morpheus.

B. *The Action of the Dream: the Theme illustrated (6-291).* *Act I. The case of Eolus (6-87). Scene I. At the Court of Minos in Hell (6-26).*—Characters at the Court: Pluto, Ruler of Hell; Minos, the Justice; Cerberus, the Constable; Diana and Neptune, plaintiffs; Eolus, the defendant; Morpheus and Lydgate, spectators. (a) Eolus led in by Cerberus (6). (b) Silence proclaimed by Pluto (7). (c) The complaint of Diana: Eolus had destroyed her forests with his blasts wherefore the deer were without shelter (8-11). (d) The complaint of Neptune: Eolus had disputed with him the jurisdiction of the sea and had caused him to turn against his natural course and to labor far out of measure, making him to ebb and flow out of his season. Moreover, Eolus had destroyed those to whom he had granted protection (12-20). (e) The case in judgment (21-23).

<sup>1</sup> I have analyzed the poem according to its dramatic divisions as if it were a Moral Play.

(f) The court dismissed, without action, at the invitation of Apollo to a banquet (24-27). *Scene II. At the palace of Apollo* (27-87). (a) Apollo sues for Diana's forgiveness of Eolus (27-34). (b) Neptune accepts Phebe as arbiter of his case (35). (c) The banquet (36-59): Apollo seats his guests at the table, Aurora and Apollo, Diana and Mars, Juno and Jupiter, Ceres and Saturn, Othea (Athena) and Cupid, Fortune and Pluto, Isis and Pan, Minerva and Neptune, Phœbus and Bacchus, Venus and Mercury. The waiters were philosophers and poets. Orpheus and Pan made music. Of dainties and meats there was a plenteous store. (d) Discord enters but is denied a place at the table (59-60). (e) Discord departs in wrath and meets with Atropos (60). (f) Atropos takes her part and enters the palace (61-62). (g) He rudely salutes the Gods (63); recites his services to them in destroying Hector, Alexander, Caesar, etc. (64-69); charges them with assisting one whom he can not destroy (70); refuses to serve them longer (71). (h) The Gods in dismay swear to help Atropos and to confound this rebel. But Eolus will not help them (72-75). (i) *Excursum:* how Eolus came into the power of Pluto (76-80). (j) Eolus, forgiven by Neptune at the request of Phebe, promises to afflict the rebel if he be in the air (81-84). (k) The name of this rebel is Virtue (85-86). Pluto sends for his son Vice (87).

*Act II. The Battle between the Vices and Virtues in the field of Microcosm* (88-210). *Scene I. The gathering of the hosts* (88-133). (a) Vice and his head-captains, Pride, Envy, Wrath, Covetousness, Gluttony, Lechery, Sloth (88-91); inferior captains, Sacrilege, Simony, etc., a great company (91-95); such a host of commons man never beheld—they were led by Idleness (95-102). (b) Virtue and his head-captains, Humility, Charity, Patience, Liberality, Abstinence, Chastity, Good-Business (103-118); inferior captains and common soldiers numbering a tenth of Vice's host (119-133). *Scene II. The preparation for the combat* (134-138). The field is Microcosm. It is entered by five highways. Conscience is judge of the battle. Freewill is Lord of the Field. (a) Vice and Virtue dub fourteen knights each (140-142). (b) They send ambassadors to Freewill (143-146). (c) Sensuality sows the field with wicked seeds (146-147). *Scene III. The battle* (148-162). (a) Virtue taries under the Sign of the Cross and wards off the shots by the Shield of the Holy Trinity (149-150). (b) Virtue, abandoned by Freewill, retreats (151-154). (c) Other captains hold the ground and Per-

severance brings reinforcements (155-159). (d) Vice is overthrown (160-162). *Scene IV. The result.* (a) Freewill repents (163-164). (b) Vice is met by Despair (165). (c) Prescience drives Vice and his host through the gates of Hell (166-167). (d) Predestination gives Virtue the palm of Victory and to all a heavenly habitation (168-170). (e) Some of Vice's host repent (171-174). (f) Free-will recompenses Virtue. Freewill is made bailiff in Microcosm under Reason. Sensuality is guided by Sadness. To Morpheus are given the five keys of the highways (178-187). (g) Atropos, angry at the Gods, seeks another master. He is called Death and given possession of Microcosm (188-209). (h) Virtue is exalted above the firmament to receive the Crown of Glory (210).

*Act III. The School and Lessons of Doctrine: The Doubt Solved* (211-290). The place, a garden with four pictured walls; the porter, Wit; the teachers, Doctrine, Holy Text, Gloss and Moralization; the scribe, Scripture. *Scene I. (a). The Interpretation by Doctrine of the dream and of the four "Times" pictured on the walls* (211-275). First, the imprisonment of Eolus signifies that wealth increases misrule. Every man is judged by Minos according to his wickedness. The complaint of Diana and Neptune signifies the folly of fools in seeking to bring the winds to correction. When they came to the banquet of Apollo like fools they gave up the matter to oblivion. The Gods resemble false idols. In the beginning the people slept in pagan law. The poets feigned many fables which were given places and names. Idolatry was the rule during the Time of Deviation from Adam to Moses. With Moses began the Time of Revocation which endured to the Incarnation of Christ. The New Testament opens the time of Reconciliation. The Time of Pilgrimage or War is signified by the battle between Vice and Virtue. As for Atropos his complaint signifies the constraint of friendship. Discord must needs be avenged by Death. The battle betokens the moral struggle in the soul. Microcosm is the world of man. Perseverance betokens the continuance of virtuous living. Prescience and Predestination are the rewarders of Vice and Virtue. The five keys are man's five wits. The return of man to sin is prevented by Reason and Sadness. *Scene II. The reconciliation of Reason and Sensuality: the theme completed* (276-288). a. Death, Reason and Sensuality enter. Of Death Lydgate is afraid. Reason argues that Death ought to be shunned. In this sentiment Sensuality accords. (b). Doctrine vanishes (289-290).

C. *The Conclusion* (292–301). (a). The dream broken (291–293). (b). Lest fault be found with me I record the vision (294–296). (c). The exhortation (297–301): Gentle Reader, walk alway in the path of Virtue. Fight daily against the World, the Flesh, and the Devil. Thine shall be the glory and the heavenly mansions. Let us pray that the Lord of Glory give us grace. Let us magnify his name. To you may Jesus grant eternal joy.

#### B. LITERARY STUDIES.

1. *The Religious Character of the Poem*.—The *Assembly of Gods* is one of Lydgate's numerous moral treatises so sounding in virtues that Bishop Alcock of Ely (b. 1430), in sermons addressed to the generation succeeding the poet, might praise it as leading to “the encrease of vertue and the oppression of vyce.”<sup>1</sup> It is a sermon in verse, only the moral truth is “cloked,” as Stephen Hawes phrases it, “with cloudy fygures.” By this time Lydgate at Bury St. Edmunds must have become an excellent ecclesiastic. In the poem he freely employs the vocabulary of mediæval monasticism. The explanation by Doctrine, for instance, of the pagan deities, and indeed the whole discourse of Doctrine, is in the manner of the early theologians and schoolmen. Thus the writings of Fulgentius, the grammarian (c. 480–550), notably his *Mythologiarum* (*Mythologicon*) *Libri*, which explains the pagan names and legends, may be cited as the far source of that portion of the poem which interprets the deities, and the *Hamartigenia* and *Psychomachia* of Prudentius, the Christian hymn writer, a little earlier than Fulgentius, may be consulted for the origin of that part which contains the battle of the vices and virtues. Lydgate's immediate masters in opinion and sentiment were the compilers of the *Gesta Romanorum*.

The definite teachings of the treatise might indeed be gathered into a system.<sup>2</sup> The one God is thought of as a Supreme Judge, Alpha and Omega omnipotent, standing above the firmament and apportioning infinite rewards and punishments. Life is a pilgrimage, a war with the sins. Sin is the parent of all woe. Death

<sup>1</sup> *Sermo* on Luke viii., printed c. 1496. “Frendes I remembre dayes here before in my youthe that there was a vertuous monke of Bury called Lydgate, whiche wrote many noble histories and made many vertuous balettes to the encrease of vertue and oppression of vyce.” Brydges' *Brit. Biblog.*, iii. p. 533.

<sup>2</sup> That Lydgate knew his creed well is shown by *London Lackpenny*, Minor Poems, p. 106.

is the supreme object of dread. Salvation is sacramental and sacerdotal. Remedies against sin are found in the Seven Blessings of the Gospel, the Seven Virtues of God, the Ten Commandments, the Twelve Articles of the Faith, the Seven Sacraments, Veneration of the Cross and the Saints, the Doctrine of Unity and the System of Redemption in Christ. The necessity of penance is especially enjoined. The chief sacraments are Baptism and the Eucharist, the one being regarded as the sacrament of the new birth, the other as the sacrament of sanctification which maintains the new life. Of course the church is built on the stone of Peter who keeps the keys of Heaven. In all the poem there is not the least suggestion of the coming Reformation or of the work of Wyclif. A digression is made at one point to notice the error of Origen (st. 227.) And circumcision is held in derision (st. 173.). The work closes appropriately with a prayer to the Son of the Virgin Mary.

Of the artistic merits of such a treatise little can be said. The poem is simply one of the many moral poems which were so popular during the Middle Ages throughout Europe and which were calculated to gratify the almost universal taste for poetry of a serious and didactic nature. We can now consider these works hardly other than monuments of the bad taste that accompanies a low literary culture. Such writings belong however to the history of literature and without their consideration that history would be incomplete.

The *Assembly of Gods* is worthy of special attention for its complex allegory, which is one of the best of its kind. I admit at the beginning that it will furnish no pleasure to those who seek in literature for originality and imaginative power. No one today would think of echoing the praise of Lydgate's poet-friends, or of placing Lydgate's name by the side of Chaucer, though he may be fair companion for Gower and Hoccleve. That Burgh should think his master knew the muses well (*Secretes*, st. 226), that Stephen Hawes should maintain that Lydgate was the "most dulcet sprynge of famous rhethoryke" (*Pastime of Pleasure*), that Dunbar should write that Lydgate had with his "mellifluate" speech illumined the English language, and that before his coming the English Isle was "bare and desolate of rethorike or lusty fresch endynte" (*The Golden Targe*)—that this chorus of eulogy should be at all received only illustrates the imperfect literary sense of the late Middle Ages in England, that period which Taine calls appropriately, for its almost utter lack alike of the "grand style" and any high imagination, the Dark Age. Lau-

reate Skelton, alone among these early writers, has a bit of discerning criticism of Lydgate's work in his *Phyllyp Sparrowe* (ll. 804-12) :

"It is dyffuse to fynde (difficult to understand)  
The sentence of his mynde,  
Yet wryteth he in his kynd,  
No man that can amend  
Those maters that he hath pende ;  
Yet some men fynde a faute,  
And say he wryteth to haute (loftily)."

But while we cannot greatly admire a poem of this moralizing kind, it must be remembered that the work is no worse than very much of the prose and poetry of the Middle-English period, nearly all of which is ethical if not distinctly religious in character, and which might be assigned with propriety to the alcoves of the theological library. Chaucer is almost the only writer amid the multitude of preachers and satirists who obeyed his artistic rather than his moral conscience. The moral and artistic blend happily, it is true, in Langland who, although a reformer, was gifted with such Dantean earnestness and strength as to elevate his noble *Piers the Plowman* into a true and poetic allegory of the soul. Beautiful too is the poem of the Pearl in its perfect union of religious earnestness and deep and delicate poetic feeling, the lyric gem of all this period. Still on the whole it must be said that while England was ready ripe for an artistic literature in the period of the Renaissance, during the Middle Ages the secret of art was wanting. For literature with the artistic stamp we must go to the continent, especially to Italy. To Provençal poetry England presents no counterpart save perhaps the people's ballads and songs of Robin Hood. Not until the advent of the "courtly makers" of the reign of Henry VIII, was there any sign of change to an artistic literature. Religion and not Art, in short, was the "Time-spirit" of the age. So prevalent is the moral motive, indeed, that it is not surprising to find even Chaucer professing himself in his last years to be more thankful that he had translated the Consolation of Boethius and repeated Saints' Lives and religious homilies than that he had written the great works of his artistic imagination, the worldly vanities of which filled his senile mind with concern. As Mr. Lowell observes in comparing Chaucer and Dante, the main question with the former was after all the conduct of life. The conduct of life—this concern has been the characteristic English trait from Caedmon to Browning. That Lydgate's life tended to moral good if not to artistic purpose

is evidenced by the prayer of Hawes in his *Excusation of the Pastime of Pleasure*, who prayed God to give him grace to compile books of “moral vertue”—

“Of my maister Lidgate to folowe the trace,  
His noble fame for laude and renue,  
Whiche in his lyfe the slouthe did eschue ;  
Makyng great bokes to be in memory,  
On whose soule I pray God have mercy.”

2. *The Fear of Death and the Scorn of the World*.—It is now quite generally acknowledged that the mediaeval conception of life is very accurately signified by a line in Dante's *Purgatorio* (xxxiii, 54–5) : “To those who live the life that is a race to death.” It is notable that the same sentiment is repeated in almost the same words, though in broad Scotch, by William Dunbar, whose death year was just two centuries after the passing of Dante, his daily sombre line running: “Quhat is this lyfe bot ane straught way to deid ?”

These lines expressly point to what was the most characteristic feature of mediævalism, the almost universal dualism of thought. In art there was developed during the early Christian era a complete system of allegory and symbolism. A world of sense images on the one hand was set over against a universe of analogical and mystical meanings on the other, the former being strictly subordinated to the latter. This exaltation of the spiritual at the expense of the natural characterized the religious life of the whole people. As Mr. Kidd makes clear, the first fourteen centuries of our civilization were devoted to the growth and development of a stupendous system of otherworldliness. The supernatural became the object of the popular faith. And the conception of a future life simply overshadowed every consideration of the present. During the two centuries that I have noted, reckoning roughly from Dante to Dunbar, this faith in the other-world reached its culmination. Before Dante the boundaries of the dual realm had not been perfectly limned; the construction of the circles of the supernatural was the work of the poet in whom thirteen centuries of Christianity actually came to expression. After Dunbar the spirit of the Renaissance is working, introducing into this divided universe the principle of unity. It is certain that in Shakespeare unity is well nigh established. The development of the English drama away from the supernaturalism of the Miracle Play and the abstraction of the Moralities and towards a more or less consistent realism indicates the breaking-up of dualistic

thought. Shakespeare having seen that men and women arrive at judgment in the world could disregard the life to come. Taking then into our view the dramatic realm of Dante, the other-world, and of Shakespeare, the present world, we discover in the centuries intervening between the life-work of these two artists the incidents of a remarkable transition in thought, the break-up of a dualistic system. In the art of the 16th century, which was more immediately the product of the Renaissance, the new principle of unity is seen to be confirmed. Naturally the tradition of religion continued longer in force. Still the Reformation church destroyed one feature of supernaturalism, the belief in Purgatory, and though it was under the necessity of maintaining the theory of Paradise and Hell, it laid greater stress than before upon the actual life of men upon the earth. It was after all a problem of the earth that Milton tried to solve—the justification of the ways of God to men.

Following the rise of the system of otherworldliness there grew in the heart of man, century by century from the founding of the church, an ever present fear, a fear that for sinful men was only increased by the joy of the martyrs, the fear of Him who was called Death, the Foeman, the invincible Archer. During the 14th and 15th centuries this dread of death was at its uttermost. On the physical side the fear at this period was heightened by the helplessness of all Europe before the ravages of the Black Plague, at the approach of which householders could only cry, "The Lord have mercy upon us." Spiritually the Day of Doom with its attendant terrors was a fully realized conception, and no man was so sure of victory that he did not tremble on the verge of the grave.

By reference to the homiletic and didactic literature of the 14th and 15th centuries in England the fear of death is found to be part and parcel of the religious feeling of the time. In the *Prick of Conscience*, which contains the religious meditations of that strange hermit and visionary, Richard Rolle of Hampole, most of whose life was contemporary with that of Dante and who bore about with him a certain Dantean mysticism, we learn of the Unstableness of the World, of Death and why it is to be dreaded, of Purgatory, Doomsday, and the Pains of Hell. Dan Michel's *Ayenbite of Inwyt*, contemporary with Hampole's work, and illustrative likewise of the teachings of the church, takes a similar view of the present and future life. Comparing these and other typical treatises with reference to the report which they make upon death, it is seen that they accord

in assigning to Death, who is invariably heralded by Dread, the execution upon all creatures of the awful sentence of doom.

It was taught, to be sure, that to good men death may be the end of evils and the beginning of every blessing. Yet the righteous could not escape from the terrors that attend death—the death that might be eternal. On the day of Doom even angels and archangels shall tremble. In a parable it was written that at the door of the house of the Spirit, Dread, the messenger of Death, should knock and demand entrance. He comes from Hell, the torments of which surpass the picturing of the imagination : in a great deep below Hell yawns, bottomless and frightful. Out of the stench and darkness rise the songs of sorrow from loathsome fiends in chains. Restless are the souls encumbered there, that are tormented by hunger and thirst, that are driven by heat and cold and bathed in burning pitch, withal feeling the turnings of the worm of conscience. Satan is there with his rake, having horns upon his head and knees, yawning with his mouth, venting fire from mouth and nostril and eyepits. This was the background of terror upon which were pictured the glories of heaven. By hopeful ones it was remembered that Christ had descended into Hell and broken the gates asunder. Gentle spirits taught that “*Loue is more stranger þanne drede*” (*Ay. of Inv.* p. 75) that “*Love of God driveth out fear*” (*Sawles Warde, O. E. Hom.* p. 259). Yet upon the foundation of fear the mediæval church was erected. The church then seemed to have been established for little else than to harass the human race.

The homiletic treatment of death and doom precedes the poetic by about a century. The characteristic utterance on these themes in English poetry is subsequent to 1400 and well along in the 16th century.<sup>1</sup> Yet Langland’s great poem (about 1362–1393) has a content typical of the century to which it belongs. Perhaps the most striking and vigorous passage in all his *Vision of the World* at work is the one descriptive of the procession of Death amid the “field full of folk” :

“Elde þe hore he was in þe vauntwarde,  
And bare þe banere bifor deth by righte he it claymed.  
Kynde come after with many kene sores,  
As pokkes and pestilences and moche people shente ;

<sup>1</sup>See Sackville’s picture in the Induction to the *Mirroure for Magistrates* and Southwell’s *Image of Death*, and many others of like import even in the days of the Renaissance.

So kynde þorw corupcions kulled ful manye.  
 Deth cum dryuende after and al to doust passhed  
 Kynges & knyghtes, kayseres and popes;  
 Lered ne lewed he let no man stonde,  
 That he hitte euene þat euere stired after.  
 Many a louely lady and lemmanes of knyghtes  
 Swouned and swelten for sorwe of dethes dyntes."

—P. Pl. Pas. xx.ii. 94-104.

So in the fear of death, Dunbar, a characteristic melancholy figure of the 15th century, wrote his startling and horrible *Dance of the Seven Deadly Sins*. For "This fals warld," he said, "is bot transitory." When Beauty won her victory over the poet—so ran his allegory—he was consigned to the custody of Grief. Youth and loveliness, bravery and wit, all come to an end:

"Onto the ded gois all estatis,  
 Princeis, prelates, and potestatis,  
 Baith riche and pur of all degré;  
 Timor mortis conturbat me."—*Lament*.

The poets, "the makers" themselves, for all their sweet service cannot escape the end: "I see the makers among the rest."

"He hes done petnously devour  
 The noble Chaucer, of makaris flour,  
 The monk of Bery, and Gower, all thre;  
 Timor mortis conturbat me."—*Lament*.

At length the man that feared not Death found a place in Barclay's *Ship of Fools* (85th), the author knowing well:

"There never was man of so greate pryde ne pompe  
 Nor of such myght, youth nor man of age  
 That myght gaynsay the sounde of dethes trompe,  
 He makes man daunce and that without courage  
 As well the state as man of lowe lynage  
 His cruell cours is ay so intretable  
 That mannys myght to withstand is nat able."

—Barclay, *Ship of Fools*, II. p. 110.

In this manner the Fool who thought to escape Death became a prominent character in the spectacle-plays. The Fool always ended by becoming perforce Death's servant. Shakspeare refers to the action in *Measure for Measure* (Act. III. Sc. i.):

<sup>1</sup>This line occurs in one of Lydgate's poems and forms the burden of more than one of the popular songs of the day, indicating the rather "sad sincerity" of English life. And cf. Villon's ballad with the refrain: "Où sont des neiges d'antan?"

“Merely, thou art death’s fool;  
For him thou labour’st by thy flight to shun,  
And yet runn’st toward him still.”

There were many sides, of course, to mediæval life. The monks often forgot their professions of sanctity and, living for the moment for the world, incurred—rightly, no doubt—the satire of the poets and preachers. Chaucer’s gay, worldling monk who “loved venerie,” and the churchman who knew rimes about Robin Hood better than his prayers and could hunt a hare in the fields better than a clause in a Saints’ Lives, were not, perhaps, uncommon types. Dunbar said, after all, “best to be blyth” in the face of the false world, and to his verses he often gave, like Villon, the sweetness of melancholy. Among the poems of the Percy MS. (Vol. III. 56) is one entitled *Death and Life* and thought to be late Middle-English work. It contains a gracious picture of Lady Dame Life, brighter than the sun, redder than the rose, ever laughing for love, awakening life and love in grass and tree, in bird and beast and man, as she speeds, with Comfort, Hope, Love, Courtesy, Honor, Mirth, Mercy and Disport in her train, in her conquest over Death. The sense of the piece, despite the intrusion of the “ugly fiend Dame Death,” is that of gladness in the thought of life. Still the ballad shines by contrast. It was most common, it appears, to scoff at the world—that was vanity and mockery. Where there was one like Chaucer who could take a calm, sane delight in life, seeing too deeply into the nature of things to despair, there were many like Pope Innocent III. to enumerate without a gleam of hope the miseries of human conditions.<sup>1</sup> “þe worlde ycleped þe dane of tyeeres,” expresses Dan Michel’s judgment. Langland, the English Mystic, had likewise an austere and frowning face, and, having in his view the “field full of folk,” burned with indignation at the worldlings there that Chaucer loved, the latter poet’s sunny and sensuous tales being regarded as mortal sin. Death it was that made the world a mockery. When Graund Amoure, in Hawes’ *Pastime of Pleasure*, became eager to heap up the world’s riches it was Death that stood by to warn that these are valueless. So it was Death that rendered Nature unlovely. In the *Example of Virtue* Hawes brought Lusty Juventus within the glorious mansion of Dame Nature, whose perfect loveliness the youth admired; but Discretion, as was his part, led

<sup>1</sup> *De Contemptu Mundi sive de Miseria Conditionis Humanae.*

to a place where the goddess's back was seen, which was all marred by an image of Death.

Taking now into consideration these two sentiments of mediæval life, the scorn of the world, and the fear of death, it is noteworthy that Lydgate represents most fully the religious attitude. In his youth he loved the pleasures of the world. In his *Testament*, referring to his wayward youth, he tells how he was converted :

“When Ver is fresshest of blosmys and of flourys,  
An vnwar storm his fresshnesse may apayre.  
Who may withstande the sterne sharp shourys  
Of dethys power, wher hym list repayre?  
Thouhe the feturis fresshe, angelik and fayre,  
Shewe out in childhood, as any cristal cleer,  
Dethes can difface hem witheyne fyfteeene yeere.

“Which now remembryng in my latter age,  
Tyme of my childhood, as I reherse shal,  
Witheyne fyfteeene holdyng my passage,  
Mid of a cloistre depict vpon a wal;  
I sauhe a crucifix, whos woundys were nat smal,  
With this woord VIDE writhen ther besyde,  
‘Behold my meeknesse, O child, and lefe thy pride.’”

From various sources we have the outward aspect of the monk in this “latter age” revealed. In a Shirley MS. (Addit. 16,165 Brit. Mus.) reference is made to “Lydgate the Monk clothed in blakke.” Douglas, mentioning Lydgate among the poets in the Court of the Muses, witnesses that he “raid musing him allone” (*Palice of Honour*.) In the prolog to the *Story of Thebes*, written by Lydgate to complete the Canterbury Tales, he describes himself as looking pale and bloodless and wearing a cape of black—no fit companion for Chaucer’s gayer pilgrims one would think. But the most perfect description is given by William Bullein in his *Dialogue against the Fever Pestilence* (Lond. 1573). Having spoken of Homer, Hesiod, Ennius and Lucan as favorites of the Muses, Bullein adds to the list of beneficiaries Gower, Skelton, Chaucer, and Lydgate. The last he thus describes: “Lamenting Lidgate, lurking emong the lilies with a bold skons, with a garland of willowes about his pate; booted he was after Sainet Benet’s guise, and a black stamell robe, with a lothly monsterous hoode, hanging backwarde; his stoopyng forward, bewayling euery estate, with the spirite of prouidence forseyng the falles of wicked men, and the slipprie seates of Princes, the ebbynge and flowing, the risyng and falling of men in auctoritie,

and how vertue doth aduaunce the simple, and vice ouerthrowe the most noble of the worlde." (*Bullein's Dialogue*, E. E. T. S., p. 17.)

Of these accounts there is every justification in Lydgate's writings. The dominant themes are without question those connected with the thought of death and change. The painting at St. Paul's of the procession of Death seemed to impress his mind deeply. Beside his translation of the French verses of the Dance Macawbre more than one reference occurs in his lyrics to the "Daunce of Poules" (*Minor Poems*, p. 34, 77). Often he pictures life as a hard pilgrimage, "in which there is no stedfast abyding." He harps recurrently upon the wretchedness of human affairs—the note being taken, he affirms, from his master Chaucer! One of his favorite topics is to show the greatness of mankind and how they are brought low: "All do but show a shadow transitory."

"Stabilnesse is founde in nothyng,  
In worldly honour who so lokithe wele;  
For deth ne sparithe emperor ne kyng,  
Though they be armed in plates made of steele;  
He castithe downe princes from fortunes wheele,  
As hir spokes rounde about goo,  
To exemplifye, who that markithe wele,  
How this world is a thurghfare ful of woo."

*On the Wretchedness of Worldly Affairs*, M. P., p. 126.

"Consideare and see the transmutacioun,  
How the sesoun of greene lusty age,  
Force of juventus, hardy as lioun,  
Tyme of manhood, wisdom, sad corage,  
And how decrepitus turneth to dotage,  
Al cast in ballaunce, bewar, forget nothyng,  
And thu shalt fynde this lyff a pylgrymage,  
In which there is no stedfast abydyng."

*—On the Mutability of Human Affairs*, p. 198.

The *Daunce of Poules* or the *Daunce Macawbre* consists of verses spoken by Death to the various persons he is leading to the grave and of their responses. All must go upon this dance, the Pope, the highest in the land, the Emperor, the Cardinal, the Empress, the King and all the lower ranks—there is none escape.

"In this myrrour every man may fynde  
That hym behoveth to gon upon this daunce  
Who goth to forne or who schal go behynde  
Al dependeth in goddes ordynaunce.

Wherfor eche man lowly take his chaunce.  
 Deth spareth not pore ne blode ryal,  
 Eche man therfor haue this in remembraunce  
 Of on matere God hath forged al."

The *Assembly of Gods* is the consummate expression of Lydgate's fear of death. Death is here the central figure throughout. In the fear all accord—Lydgate, Reason and Sensuality. Very appropriately the last recorded line written by this somewhat sombre monk, line 1491 of the *Secrees of Old Philisoffres*, is of Death:

"Deth al consumyth which may nat be denied."

3. *The Conventional Materials*.—The *Assembly of Gods* in respect to its materials, its machinery, so to speak, is anything but original. The poet is thrown into the conventional sleep by a lake side, on the hackneyed spring morning. At once we expect the poem to be crammed full of stereotyped theology, mythology and allegory. Indeed the work as a whole is merely a mosaic of current traditions, the different parts being fitted together with more or less perfect skill. When, then, we come to estimate the literary effects of compositions of this sort, their origins and history must be taken into account. Mediæval ideas had always a definite pedigree. While modern romantic literature is most characterized by its personal element, mediæval literature may be divided rather into impersonal classes, as romances, chronicles, lays, etc. Individuality rarely appeared as an element of poetic composition. Each writer, being under no compulsion to originate or invent, simply threw what he had to say into the prevailing form. The genius of poetry, both with respect to form and materials, was conventionality.<sup>1</sup> An artist was held in estimation according to his skill in plagiarizing from the world's literatures. It was sufficient that he could wisely quote, that he had won a reputation for scholarship, and that the epithet "learned" be attached to him. It is characteristic of the age that Dante, after a youth spent in writing love songs, should plan a *Convito*, to be a vast encyclopaedic work, so anxious was he that the title of "learned" might offset the reproach of a youth misspent in composing love sonnets. So Chaucer was called with approbation "learned" and

<sup>1</sup>This feature of mediæval literature is commonly spoken of by readers slightly and with meagre patience. But a traditional literature is cumulative, so to speak, in its effects. Repetition is then a virtue and not a weakness. Traditions are most effective at the moment of most common use. A later age is quite incapable of giving full and due credit to conventions that have passed; it should at least exercise charity.

the “great translator.” In his case, by reason of the blending in his works of his own stream of romantic fancy and feeling with this remote traditional tide, often strange anomalies of thought were produced. In fact Chaucer was differentiated from the writers of the period by his originality which worked with new results upon the materials that tradition had given him. Yet it was for his learning that he was most admired. It is not necessary to disprove the extent or accuracy of Chaucer’s attainment in this respect.<sup>1</sup> Like other writers of the period he was learned enough to refer suggestively to matters more or less familiar to his readers, who held their own knowledge loosely, and in the manner of all middle-age erudition, without critical accuracy. A work of this period is not then to be interpreted by itself but by the class of literature to which it belongs by virtue of associated themes and *motifs*. When one first reads the opening stanzas of the *Assembly of Gods* he exclaims that it is a dream like *Piers the Plowman*, like the *Poem of the Pearl*, like the *Roman de la Rose* and the *Divina Comedia*. These poems and many more add their several contributions to one’s delight. A phrase here, a thought there, the dream, the allegory, the pictured walls, the theme of death, in one way or another serve to recall pretty much the whole of mediaeval literatures—just probably as the author intended. Only by thus recovering the past and setting a work in the historical current, can we understand the pleasure and profit with which a poem of this kind was read by contemporaries and by those of a later time to whom its literary traditions were familiar. We must remember that to Lydgate,<sup>2</sup> for a century after his death, the distinction was given of belonging with Gower and Chaucer to the great triumvirate of letters. Not alone for his “sugurit lippis and toungis aureate” was this fame acquired, though for these he seems to have been most admired by Hawes, the Scottish poets, the critic Webb, and the poet Gray; but his praise was in the mouth of his nearest disciple, Benedict Burgh, for that “ye have gadred flouris in this motli mede,”—in the literature, that is, of the past—and on this account “to yow is yeven the verray price of excellence.” Of course a succeeding age, intent upon the Reformation and the New Learning, forgot the mediæval traditions, the dream, the allegory, the teachings of Doctrine, and

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Lounsbury *Studies in Chaucer*, ch. v.

<sup>2</sup> For the subject of Lydgate’s literary fame v. Sidney Lee’s summary in *Dict. of Natl. Biog.* XXXIV., p. 309–10.

Lydgate and his school were relegated to obscurity. Chaucer survives now not for his learning but because of the perennial charm of his native genius. No one of us cares much for Boethius or Fulgentius or Prudentius, or even Dante in his doctor's robes, dead, all of them, to modern comprehension.

No one will question Lydgate's learning or the extent of his reading. He was more or less familiar with ancient and mediæval literatures, especially that written in Latin and French. His library contained much the same books that Chaucer, Gower and Langland read. He is as pedantic as they in filling his pages with the names of authors and famous men. He illustrates, as they, the influence exercised in poetry by the scholastic and encyclopedic training of the Church and School. Mr. Lee's statement on this point is sufficient :

"Lydgate mentions familiarly all the great writers of classical and mediæval antiquity. Of Greek authors he claims some acquaintance with 'grete' Homer, Euripides, Demosthenes, Plato, Aristotle and Josephus. Among Latin writers he refers constantly to Ovid, Cicero, Virgil, and his commentator Servius, Livy, Juvenal and 'noble' Persius; to 'moral' Seneca, Lucan, Statius, Aulus Gellius, Valerius Maximus, Prudentius, Lactantius, Prosper the 'dogmatic' epigrammatist, Vegetius, Boethius, Fulgentius, Alanus ab Insulis, and Guido di Colonna. Dante, Petrarch, and Boccaccio are repeatedly commended by him among Italian writers, and he was clearly acquainted with the 'Roman de la Rose,' with French fabliaux, romances, and chronicles."—*Dict. Natl. Biog.* XXXIV., p. 309.

The mosaic of the *Assembly of Gods* is made up of the following materials, all of which are traditional and common.

Introduction with the season *motif*.

The dream.

The painted walls.

The School of Doctrine.

The pagan Divinities.

The court scene and the banquet of the Gods.

The Nine Worthies and the learned men of antiquity.

The allegory.

Proverbial phrases.

The teaching of the Church.

The Seven Sins and Virtues.

The battle of Antichrist.  
The Liberal Sciences.  
The five Wits.  
The fear of Death.  
The romance of Paris and Helen.

4. *The Season Motif.*<sup>1</sup> The introduction of Middle-English poems by reference to the season of the year and the position of the planets seems generally to have been merely a part of the machinery of composition—a happy way of getting started. The same prelude is met with in the Provençal, French and German lyrics of the period with wearisome regularity. The May landscape especially was stereotyped into set forms that could have had but a rhetorical significance. With Chaucer and most of the Scottish poets, the nature-prelude was, one feels, something more than derivative. Chaucer, King James, Dunbar, and Douglas especially appear to draw quite directly from nature with a heartfelt feeling for the season. They write with an unction and an eye for delicate effects never exhibited in the purely conventional prelude. Chaucer's love of nature amounted almost to a passion. Whatever he touched broke into full blossom. Reading him, as Lowell says, is like brushing through the dewy grass at sunrise. Poets with Chaucer's spirit had naturally a sense for nature as a dramatic background for their compositions. Thus it was agreed that May<sup>2</sup> was the "mirthful month," the "quicking" season, the month of "joy and disport," the one that "among months sittith like a queen"—the time, therefore, for beginning love-poems and romantic allegories. Chaucer tells us that in the Spring he would say farewell to his books and walk out in the meadow; this was the time to compose "Seyntes Legends of Cupid." The association of the romances with the Spring was so common that there came to be a saying that "Arthur is the man of May." Where the dramatic motive was present other seasons would be employed as the occasion required. *The Pearl* occurred in the high season of August when the reapers' sickles were in the corn. Lyndesay's *Dreme* opens appropriately with a

<sup>1</sup> See McLaughlin, *Studies in Mediæval Life and Literature*, ch. i.; also Veitch, *Nature in Scottish Poetry*.

<sup>2</sup> There is a primitive feeling among poets that Spring is the season of delights. Keats had this sense in a large degree when he began to write *Endymion* "while the early budders are just new," hoping that no wintry season should find his work incomplete.

dreary winter's night in January. Dunbar's horrible *Dance of the Sinns* is seen in February. Sackville's *Mirroure for Magistrates*, which harks back to the Chaucer School, begins in the "wrathful winter." In one instance Chaucer opens a poem, the *Hous of Fame*, modelling his work upon Dante, with the December season. In Henryson's melancholy story of Troylus and Cresyde there is an open effort to construct a dramatic background, for the poet says in beginning :

"Ane doolie sesoun to ane cairfull dyte  
Suld correspond, and be equivalent;  
Richt sa it wes quhen I began to write  
This tragedie, the wedder richt fervent,  
Quhen Aries, in middis of the Lent,  
Schoruris of haill can fra the north descend,  
That scantlie fra the cauld I micht defend."

But there are other cases, as Langland's *Piers the Plowman*,<sup>3</sup> where no aesthetic value in the prelude can be determined. The last of these derivative forms, as in Skelton's *Bowe of Court*, or Fletcher's *Purple Island*, seem but rhetorical. The conventional aspect of the introduction is well displayed by Lyndesay when he begins his doleful *Monarchie* with the May morning, as if he were unable to get started in any other way, but realizing that his purpose is to describe mortal miseries, he calls a truce to his vain descriptions and turns to the matter in hand.

In the minds of some writers there may have been a thought of the planetary influences that ever streamed down from the heavens upon the earth. Astrology is known to have been an attractive theme to the mediæval poets. "It was the delight of Dante," says Dean Church, "to interweave the poetry of feeling and of the outward sense with the grandeur of order, proportion, measured magnitudes, the relation of abstract forces displayed on such a scene as the material universe." Chaucer constantly makes a literary use of astrology though personally skeptical of the pretensions of the science. This perception of the starry forces at work in the lives of men must have been present in the first of the preludes. Thus the introduction served almost the function of an invocation to the Muses. King James, indeed, invoking the Muses Nine, passes at once to consider the Spring "that full of vertu is and gude." In one of the very earliest of the poems containing the typical season

<sup>3</sup>Langland seemed to have had Mapes' Golias satire in mind when he began to write. Note Mapes' "Inter prodigia plebem innumeram."

motive, the *Apocalypse of Golias*, written toward the close of the 12th century, the astronomical allusion is prominent :

“A Tauro torrida lampade Cynthii  
Fundente jacula ferventis radii  
Umbrosas nemoris latebras adii,  
Explorans gratiam levis Favonii.  
  
Aestivae medio diei tempore,  
Frondosa recubans Jovis sub arbore,  
Astantis video formam Pythagorae :  
Deus scit, nescio, utrum in corpore.”

May was the month of life because the planets at that season had special power of hot and moist.<sup>1</sup>

With Lydgate and his immediate pupils, as Hawes in the *Pastime of Pleasure*, the astronomical introduction is apparently a matter of pure literary habit. The vision of the *Temple of Glas* takes place in December, after its model the *Hous of Fame*. The opening of the *Assembly of Gods*—the only reference to nature in the work—is conventional. It is barely possible that in the monk’s scholastic mind there was in the reference to the spheres the suggestion of the harmony to be achieved by Reason and Sensuality.

5. *The Vision.*<sup>2</sup> In the psychology of the Middle Ages the vision is perhaps the most remarkable phenomenon displayed. The records of dreams constitute in Europe and England an entire literature with features peculiar to the kind. Some of this dream-work is in imitation of the revelations of Scripture; some works are clearly due to the hallucinations of an ascetic life; some are as plainly the results of adoration, the fruits of “contemplative life,” in the exercise of which men passed from the knowledge of things of sense to knowledge of things eternal; others reveal the passion for dogmatic definition that characterized the schoolmen however mystical the theme; other forms are secular and merely a part of the higher rhetoric of poetry as then conceived and developed. After the Bible, the head sources of the mediæval visions seem to have been the “Dialogues” of St. Gregory, a compilation of many religious dreams, the *De Consolatione Philosophie* of Boethius, and the *Somnium Scipionis* in Cicero’s treatise on The Republic. In

<sup>1</sup> For the effects of the seasons upon the lives of men see Lydgate’s *Testament, The Mutability of Human Affairs*, and the *Secrees*.

<sup>2</sup> See Lecky’s *History of European Morals*, II., pp. 116 *et seq.*, 220. For further references to the literature of the vision see Schick’s Intro., p. cxviii.

general, two types of vision are distinguishable, in accordance with their monastic or worldly origin. In the visions of one class the dreamer takes into his view the circles of the supernatural, and reports as man may of the revelations accorded him either of Heaven or Hell or the intermediate states. In the other class the objects of contemplation are in the "wilderness of this world," and the dream may be but a poetical device, a kind of framework for any secular action or incident, as the experiences of a lover in the *Romaunt of the Rose*. In English literature illustration of the first type is furnished by *The Pearl*, with its view of the heavenly city; Dunbar's *Dance of the Seven Deadly Sins*, with its vision of Hell; and Lyndesay's *Dreme*, which gives the reader sight of all the circles of the Infinite. Probably the earliest instance in England of this kind of dream is the *Apocalypse of Golias*, written in Latin by Walter Mapes (b. 1143), a work which enjoyed an extraordinary popularity during the 13th and 14th centuries. The chief examples of the second type are Langland's *Piers the Plowman*, Chaucer's several dreams, King James's *Quair*, Dunbar's *Golden Targe*, Skelton's *Bowge of Court*, etc.

The *Assembly of Gods* is in its scope a vision of the first order, though the battle takes place in Microcosm. Probably Lydgate did not have any very real sense of the other worlds, nor could he ever loose his imagination so that he really saw visions—at best he asked but for dogmatic definition as the schoolmen before him.

6. *Proverbial Phrases.* Like other writers of the period Lydgate makes a conspicuous use of conventional phrases and proverbial sayings. A considerable body of proverbs, rhetorical figures, and phrases may be gathered from his works, some of which are peculiar to his own usage and style, while others are the common property of literature. On a later page is given a list of the proverbs and phrases employed in this poem. The manner of the employment of a stock simile by writers is well illustrated by the history of the phrase "hair like gold wire" which seems to have been given currency by Lydgate. The simile first occurs in Layamon's *Brut* (ll. 7047-8), where it is employed to describe King Pir who was so wondrous fair. By Lydgate it was first used to characterize the feathers of a bird in the *Chorl and Bird*. In the *Temple of Glas* and the *Assembly of Gods* (l. 373) the reference is to Venus with her ever sunnish hair. In the *Troy-Book* it occurs no less than seven times being applied both to men and women. The larger compari-

son "hair like gold" is often found in European literature before Lydgate as in the *Roman de la Rose*, but this special phrase is Lydgate's own. From this time to the close of the sixteenth century the figure is in constant employment<sup>1</sup>, generally descriptive of women of ideal beauty. Its force is partly spent in Shakespeare's time, for the reverence for gold hair is satirized by the saying of Benedick in *Much Ado about Nothing* (II., 3, 36): "Her hair shall be of what colour it please God." In sonnet cxxx. reference is made to Lydgate's simile in the line, "If hairs be wires, black wires grow on her head."

7. *The Painted Wall.*<sup>2</sup> The pictured wall was another rhetorical device common to mediæval poetry—an elastic framework into which any subject could be made to fit. It was a convenient means of extending indefinitely the scope of one's work. To such an extent was the method carried that a secondary poet like Stephen Hawes cannot mention a wall without covering it over with pictures. Instances of the usage will be found in Boccaccio's *Thesiaid*, in the romance of *Guigemar* by Marie de France, Lorris's *Roman de la Rose*, Chaucer's *Boke of the Duchesse*, Lydgate's *Temple of Glas* and *Assembly of Gods*, Hawes's *Pastime of Pleasure*, Dunbar's *Dream*, Barclay's *Towre of Virtue and Honour*, etc. In the romances the stories depicted are commonly those of love. In *Guigemar*, for instance, the walls are painted with images of Venus and scenes from Ovid's Art of Love, and in the *Boke of the Duchesse* the imagery is that of the *Roman de la Rose*. In descriptions of the temples of Mars and Diana scenes of war and the hunt will appear. The siege of Troy or Thebes was a favorite theme for the walls of palaces. Scriptural scenes occur in cathedrals and cloisters. Dunbar saw on his chamber walls

"All the nobill storyis old and new,  
Sen oure first father formed was of clay."

<sup>1</sup> For many instances of its usage see Schick's *Temple of Glas*, notes, pp. 88-90; and Kölbing, *Bavis of Hamtoun*, notes, pp. 244-5; and for a full discussion of its usage and aesthetical meaning see a paper by the present editor read before the English Club (Chicago) and reported in outline in the *University Quarterly Calendar* (May, 1895), p. 80.

<sup>2</sup> See Warton, *Hist. of Eng. Poetry*, II., pp. 131, 275, 402; III., p. 63; on page 402, Vol. II., is reprinted a passage from an Itinerary written in 1322 describing Westminster palace; see Longfellow's *Golden Legend* for instances of picture and play; a description of convent walls is given in *Piers the Plowman's Crede*, II. 180, *et seq.*

While this method is an open piece of machinery when viewed as rhetoric, quite ludicrous too when as elaborate as Lydgate's arbor walls which reveal the history of the world in small, yet it should be remembered that during the Middle Ages the picture was the favorite means of conveying story and doctrine. It is a remarkable feature of mediaeval art that often no positive line of division can be drawn between literature and picture or spectacular show. The paintings on royal palaces of the scenes of war, the weaving on ladies' tapestries of the incidents of romance, the picturing on cloister walls of the saints and scenes from Scripture, the depiction in public places as on the bridge at Lucerne and in the churches in France and England of such instructional processions as the Dance of Death, the scenic representation of sacred things in liturgies, and pageants and street plays—these constituted the popular literature of the period, of far greater influence than the written page that issued from the scriptorium of the monastery. Allegory, the written picture, necessarily adopted the scenic method for which the mind was already prepared. This interplay of imagery between picture and allegory contributed much to the later establishment of an independent literature. But for the present the pictorial was the literary. Even Chaucer was not freed from the necessity of "drawing of picture."

8. *The Admixture of Pagan and Christian Traditions.*—One characteristic of the *Assembly of Gods* is the curious admixture in it of pagan and Christian traditions. The pagan deities are all ranged on the side of the Vices of Christendom. The Christian Vice is represented as the son of Pluto, who is the Lord of the Christian Hell. The ancient Fateful Atropos, who cut with shears the thread of pagan life, is transformed into Death with a lance, the dread of the Christian Church.

It was the almost universal practice of the poets of late Middle English to confound the mythology of all peoples and to mix up incongruously the pagan myths and Christian allegories, constituting in fact a veritable mythology of their own. Gower in his *Confessio Amantis*, Douglas in his *Palice of Honour*, King James in his *Quair*, and others of the allegorical school display their learning in this manner. Such usage points to the renaissance of paganism, accompanying the temporary decay of Christianity in the 14th century, and to the rise of a new mythology, and foreshadows the new learning of the next century. The results of this renaissance in Europe a century later

are well exhibited by Browning in his poem, *The Bishop Orders his Tomb*, where Pans and Nymphs, symbols of Delphic wisdom and Bacchic revels, the Saviour on the Mount, St. Praxed in his glory and Moses with his tables are brought into juxtaposition on the sculptured tomb. We know too that in Italy Plato was called the second Moses and Orpheus, Empedocles, Parmenides and others were placed on a level with David and the prophets.

In some cases there seems to be more than a poetic use of the machinery of mythology—as if some profound meaning was read into the ancient myths. Always when traditional currents from different sources blend, the underlying human meanings are transferred and commonly understood. When Angelo painted in the Last Judgment an Herculean Christ he was clearly not irreverent. Dante wrote Olympus for Paradise (*Purg.* c. xxiv. l. 15). He spoke of Christ as “Sommo Giove” who was crucified for us (*Purg.* c. vi. l. 118). In canto xxix, the Grifon naturally symbolizes the Christ. In a like spirit Milton and others have spoken of Christ as the “mighty Pan,” and Milton’s Deity, as Lowell observes, was a Calvanistic Zeus. Even Bunyan introduces, into his *Holy War*, Cerberus, who swears by St. Mary, and the Furies, Alecto, Megaera and Tisiphone, and the incongruity of their presence there seems to have escaped his attention. Chaucer in calling one of his works the *Seintes Legend of Cupyde* must have entered into the spirit of the heathen pantheism as a real form of religion.<sup>1</sup>

It is not so clear that Lydgate entered very deeply into the spirit of mythology. His usage is not very consistent. In the *Assembly of Gods* Cupid is counted among the vices. But in another piece attributed to Lydgate (Fairfax MSS. xvi. Bibl. Bodl.) the rubrics of the missal are applied to the god Cupid for whose sake many were martyrs. In the *Life of Our Lady* the beauty of the Virgin Mary is compared with that of Helen, Polyxena, Lucretia, Dido, Bathsheba and Rachel. The clearest case of insight is in his *Testament* where Jesus is spoken of as

“Our Orpheus that fro captivyte<sup>2</sup>  
Feit Erudice to his celestial tour.”

In the present instance Doctrine is under the necessity of explaining away the heathen worship.

<sup>1</sup>Cf. Mr. Jephson’s remark, Skeat’s ed. *Pr. Tale*, notes p. 136.

<sup>2</sup>Jesus was frequently represented in early Christian paintings in the form of Orpheus, who overcame death.

9. *The Allegorical Type.*—Middle-English literature exhibits two types of allegory : the one religious and scholastic, having its origin in the exegetical and homiletic literature of the monks and leading on to the literature of the Reformation ; the other secular and profane, embodying the spirit of romance, personifying especially the God of Love, who was the central object of the song and worship of the continental minnesinger and troubadour, leading on in its turn to the literature of the Renaissance. The two types, differing thus in origin, while often confused with respect to form, are always distinguishable in motive.

The original *Roman de la Rose* represents in one composition the double type already established on the continent. The first part, being conceived in a love of beauty and composed with the fancy and imagination actively at play, is pure poetry. Lorris, though a belated *trouvere*, was true at heart and sang as the impulse prompted him. The second part of the *Roman*, written forty years after the first by a reformer and moralist, Jean de Meung, not to be mistaken for a poet, is didactic, satirical, and metaphysical. By the aid of Lorris's personification, Meung was enabled to expound and popularize his ideas of reform, but his impersonations recall nothing so well as the entities of the schoolmen. The personifications and materials of the didactic system were adopted by the poets whose purpose was moral or satirical, by Langland, Gower, Lydgate, Lyndesay, Skelton and Barclay, and by the Moral-plays so soon as personification became necessary in the advance of the drama from scenic representation to dramatic characterization.

Upon the model of the *Roman de la Rose*, which was translated into English with amplifications of the first part and omission of much of the second part, were formed the love allegories and romances which, being all in the "May morning" style, with sunny gardens and birdies manifold, contain whatever of poetic inspiration the later Middle Ages in England possessed. The new *Romaunt of the Rose* provided the staple model for the poets of the court. It directed the composition of the *Court of Love*, and was the chief influence that entered the *Drome*, Chaucer's *Boke of the Duchesse* and perhaps his *Hous of Fame*. To the list we may add Lydgate's *Temple of Glas*, which was modeled upon Chaucer's *Hous of Fame*, and probably Hawes's *Pastime of Pleasure*. To the same family of romance allegory belongs much of the literature of Scotland written during the 15th century, that

at least of most refinement and delicacy, notably Dunbar's *Thissil and the Rois* and the *Golden Targe*, and the beautiful *Quair* by James, "the best poet who ever was a king." In the romantic vein Gawain Douglas wrote his *Palace of Honour*, a more serious style appearing in *King Hart*, which allegorizes the progress of human life. This stream of romantic allegory flows on to Spenser, forming in the *Faery Queene* the supreme type of poetic allegory. Though Spenser was an artist of the Renaissance he was yet the literary descendant of Chaucer and the mediæval romanticists, of those who were too great as artists to be ever dominated by the moralities.

As for the rest of the allegorical literature in late Middle-English the tendency is to sermonize. In the case of Langland and perhaps of Lyndesay their seriousness is of such a nature as to claim our attention as artistic. Gower might have been a romancer if he had not seen behind every tale some hidden form of Vice. John Skelton, laureate of Henry VII, the last of the school which called Chaucer master, while writing some pieces in the romantic spirit, yet is more pleased to satirize follies and vices as in his *Bowge of Court*. Characteristic of the times now that the Reformation was near at hand is the *Ship of Fools* (1508), a satirical allegory after the model of Brandt's Swabian poem, by Barclay who caught up for the purpose of satire the idea of a navy of practical vices sailing out presumably into the ocean of ruin. Erasmus in a corresponding spirit wrote his satirical *Praise of Folly*. The allegory of the Reformation culminates at length in Bunyan's *Visions*.

To this now primary and now secondary stream of moral and allegorical literature Lydgate's *Assembly of Gods* belongs. This is not, however, satirical or very serious concerning reform, and it strives after certain effects of the *Romaunt of the Rose*. But so far as Lydgate is concerned the romantic tide has ebbed—he is a monk with the interest of the church at heart.

10. *The Relationship between the Allegory and the Moral Play.*—The close relationship between the moral plays and the *Assembly of Gods* is clearly seen. In an earlier period<sup>1</sup> such poems as the *Cursor Mundi* and the contemporary miracle plays exactly corresponded, the only difference being that one was recited and the

<sup>1</sup> It is conjectured with good reasons that the demon frolics in Dante's *Inferno*, c. xxi and xxiv, were reproduced from some dramatic mystery plays of which the performances on the Ponte Carraia at Florence in 1304 are conspicuous instances (Plumptre).

other acted. The same correspondence existed later between the moral plays, which represented the natural dramatic evolution from the miracle plays, and the allegories, which exhibit a like advance in dramatic expression. This interaction between the two forms of art is important to observe. The moral play involved allegory as an essential part of its artistic apparatus. In the very earliest pageants and plays, allegorical characters, taken from both profane and sacred writings, played a more or less important part. The miracle plays required the introduction of such characters as Sin and Death, Faith, Hope and Charity. Among the first innovations were representations of Veritas, Justitia, Pax and Misericordia, as in the "Parliament of Heaven" in the English Coventry series (X1). As early as Henry VI., whose reign may be fixed upon as the epoch of the permanent adoption of the moral play (Collier, *An. of the St.*, p. 32), personification of the Sciences, Nature, Grace, Fortune, and the moral qualities was well known. The World, Flesh and Devil appeared in character in *Originale de Sancta Maria Magdalena*, a play of the time of Henry VII. The play of *Everyman*, belonging perhaps to the time of Edward IV., is one of the most perfect allegories ever given form. In the Vices and Virtues especially there was something inevitably dramatic in the very nature of contrast. So that with few exceptions the allegory of the Moral-plays is based on the contest between good and evil in the mind of man; of this character is the allegory of the *Castle of Perseverance*, *Man Will and Understanding*, *Nature*, *The World and the Child*, *Hick-Scorner*, *Everyman*, *Lusty Juventus*, etc. It is probable indeed that the one allegorical figure Vice, in his Protean character of Infidelity, Iniquity, Hypocrisy, Desire and the like, has played a more conspicuous part upon the stage than any other single dramatic personage.

Thus the familiar use of allegorical personages upon the stage contributed to the popular taste for allegorical poems. The names representing abstract qualities recalled so vividly the actual persons seen upon the stage that the mere recitation of the qualities was sufficient to body forth the form. The catalog of names in the *Assembly of Gods* is tedious enough to the modern reader, but in an age of objective dramatic presentation the names and persons were intimately associated.

The *Assembly of Gods* finds its analogue then in the contemporary Moral-plays. The poem may actually be divided into scenes

and the *personæ* speak in character. Some portions, as the assembly of the gods and the gathering of the different hosts, might take the form of a masque.<sup>1</sup> Poem and play differ only in the method of presenting the same form of thought.

The dramatic cast of the poem might well be expected in the case of Lydgate, who seemed as well able to direct a street pageant as to write verses in a cloistre. He devised pageants for the Mercers' and Goldsmiths' Companies in honor of Wm. Estfield, who was London's mayor in 1429 and 1437 (v. *Dict. Natl. Biog.*, XXXIV, p. 306). Stowe in his *Annals of England* (p. 385) witnesses that in 1445, at the reception in London of Queen Margaret, the wife of Henry VI., several pageants were exhibited at Paul's gate with verses written by Lydgate (v. *Hist. Eng. Pageants*, ed. Howes, p. 385; *Pur le Roy*, M. P.). According to Ritson (*Bibl. Poet.*, p. 79) Lydgate wrote a Disguising or Mumming before the King at Eltham. Ritson also inserts in his list of Lydgate's works "a procession of pageants from the creation." This is exceedingly doubtful, for, as Halliwell says (M. P. p. 94), Ritson only copied from Tanner, whose conjecture it was that the Coventry Series of Miracle Plays was written by Lydgate. But the *Processioun of Corpus Christi* (title given by Shirley), attributed by Ritson to Lydgate and so printed by Halliwell, while not dramatic in form, contains an enumeration and description, as if in procession, of Patriarchs and Saints from Adam to Thomas Aquinas. The *Dance of Death* and the *Pilgrimage of the World* are essentially dramatic. The dramatic element of *Bycorne and Chichevache*, which was doubtless borrowed from a French mystery play,<sup>2</sup> is also worthy of note. Certainly not the least excellence of the *Assembly of Gods* is its dramatic picturesqueness. It was this characteristic which Collier noted that he remarked "the story is very dramatic, and far less dull than most pieces of the kind" (*An. of the St.* p. 31).

11. *The Allegory of the Vices and Virtues*.—In considering the central allegory of the *Assembly of the Gods* the reader is brought into relation with one of the great themes of literature, the almost universal subject of war, the war that proceeds within the soul—

<sup>1</sup> It seems to be well established that the English masque, and the pageants, derived their popularity and meaning from the allegorical poems and plays. Dunbar's Dance of the Sins is a masque in form. The Dance of Death was a graveyard processional.

<sup>2</sup> See Dodsley's *Old Plays*, XII. p. 302.

how man battles through trials and temptations to heaven's gate, how he falls oft but rises again, how he wins at length the victory over Sin and Death. This is in truth the dominant allegory of man. So universal, indeed, is the treatment in the literature of Christendom of the theme of man's salvation that the collected volumes of that literature may be said to constitute a veritable Epic of Penance. For note how often in great literatures, in the works of Dante, Langland, Chaucer, Spenser, Bunyan, Goethe, Tennyson and Browning, to name the greatest, the real content of life is described in the terms of pilgrimage and battle—the life that in the Middle Age was in very fact a Crusade and a Tournament, an ascent up the Mount of Purgatory, that was in Reformation times a Pilgrim's Progress and a Holy War, that is still a "War of Sense with Soul," where the obligation never ceases to "Fight on, fare ever." The literature of this struggle, wherein not only the soul of man is involved but also the spiritual powers beyond our world, where Earth and Heaven and Hell are mingled in contest, constitutes in its entirety the most stupendous epic which the genius of man has conceived.

In some form the subject is older than Christianity. War itself is a primitive theme. The heathen myths pictured the agents of nature as engaged in warfare, the healing and harmful forces, the Light and the Darkness, the Summer and the Winter, the sun-gods and the frost-giants. In one of the earliest of historic religions, Zoroasterism, the idea of antagonism in the moral life occurs, the contest between the Prince of Light and the Prince of Darkness being figured upon the earthly sphere. On the spiritual side Plato's myth of the contending steeds is again a record of the primitive soul. Thus the necessity has been laid on man from the first of "working out the beast" and "letting the ape and tiger die." It is true that Christianity brought into greater prominence the need of warfare. "*Estote fortes in bello et pugnato cum antiquo serpente*"—thus the Scriptures exhorted the Christian convert to the fearful battle against sin. Then when paganism came in contact with Christianity the terms of war and of military society were naturally applied to the new life and to the kingdom of Heaven. Christ was King. His apostles were thegns who went forth to the wars. With the spiritual conceptions of the new gospels was mingled the mythology which dealt with the warfare of Nature. The conflict between Day and Night was transferred to Christ and Satan, to Eternal Light and Eternal Darkness.

Chivalry, gathering from paganism all that was best in war, strength, prudence, courage, knightly honor, and from Christianity an ideal of spiritual perfection, now became the established principle of society, a society that received its personal ideal in the figure of King Arthur and its social ideal in the Order of the Round Table.

While society itself was thus being organized in accordance with the ideal of militant Christianity, the severest of spiritual battles were being fought out within the cloisters of the monks. A severer morality was naturally exacted from the monks than from the ordinary Christian. It was then within the monasteries of the third and fourth centuries that the "Olympian battle with Sin" began. By Ambrose (340-397) and his pupil Augustine (354-430) the Platonic virtues called "cardinal," Wisdom, Justice, Fortitude, and Temperance, were resolved into Christian graces. To these were added the triad of theological virtues, Faith, Hope and Love. Against these seven were arrayed for the trial of the saints seven deadly sins, Pride, Avarice, Anger, Gluttony, Lust, with two others selected from Envy, Vain-glory, Tristitia or Accidia. An intense and concentrated struggle against human weakness was thus set on foot. On the basis of these sins a penitential system was devised, some form of pilgrimage up the mount of Purgatory.

By the time that Dante wrote his *Comedia* the exactions of monastic virtue were enforced upon all the children of the Church and a penitential pilgrimage enjoined. In the *Inferno* a classification of the sins is given as found in the *Summa Theologica* of St. Thomas Aquinas, which is based upon the ethical principles of Aristotle as interpreted, probably, by Averrhoes. Sin, having been triumphant, is come to punishment in Hell according to what Dante calls the law of "contrapass" [retribution] (*Inferno* xxviii, 142.). But in Purgatory sin is not allowed to develop into act but appears as an inner incitement. It is shown, therefore, not as punishment but as recreation where struggle must enter, the will for holiness being victorious.

"And I will sing that second realm instead,  
Wherein man's spirit frees itself from stain,  
And groweth worthy Heaven's high courts to tread."

*—Purg. ll. 4-6.*

For this purpose Dante employed the popular penitential system of the Church which brought into prominence the necessity of dis-

cipline by struggle against sin in the pilgrimage of this world. Thus the various stairs of Penitence are named after the seven monastic moralities.

When Dante is resting on the fourth terrace of Purgatory, Virgil explains to him the nature and relation to each other of the seven mortal sins. He is explaining the teachings of St. Augustine and considers sin with respect to its causes. Love is the common ground. Love perverted by selfishness and erring in its object is pride, envy and anger. Love remiss, defective in vigor, is sloth. Love excessive is avarice, gluttony and lust. (So earlier Augustine defined virtue as *amor ordinatus*, vice as *amor non ordinatus* (*Civ. D.* XV. 221). Sin is mortal because it attacks the conditions of spiritual life, preventing in society the exercise of love. Pride is the most deadly, nearest therefore to the state of hell, because it strikes directly at love and hinders to the utmost the soul's higher life.

The current ethics of the church during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries respecting the nature of the vices is also contained in a poem entitled *Septem Peccata Mortalia*, of doubtful authorship but ascribed by some (Witte, Krafft and others) to Dante.

"In Pride the root of every sin doth lie:  
 Hence man himself doth hold in loftier fame  
 Than others, and deserving lot more high.  
 Envy is that which makes us blush for shame,  
 With grief beholding others' happiness,  
 Like him, whom we the face of God proclaim.  
 Wrath still more woe doth on the wrathful press,  
 For its fierce mood lights up hell's fiery heat;  
 Then ill deeds come, and loss of holiness.  
 Sloth looks with hate on every action meet,  
 And to ill-doing ever turns the will,  
 Is slow to work, and quick to make retreat.  
 Then Avarice comes, through which the whole world still  
 Vexes its soul, and breaks through every law,  
 And tempts with gain to every deed of ill.  
 Both fool and wise foul Gluttony doth draw,  
 And he who pampers still his appetite,  
 Shortens his life, to fill his greedy maw.  
 And Lust that comes the seventh in order right,  
 The bonds of friendship breaks and brotherhood,  
 At variance still with Truth and Reason's light."

—Trans. by Plumptre, II., p. 324.

In tracing now in literature this allegory of life we are led back to a favorite classic of the dark ages, the *Psychomachia* of Prudentius, the work of a Christian poet who flourished during the early part of the fifth century, who is best known to the modern world for his Hymns, repeated editions of which were issued during the fifteenth, sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.

The *Psychomachia*<sup>1</sup> (Migne, *Patrol.* Ser. L. Vol. 60), written in hexameters in ecclesiastical Latin, represents allegorically the conflict between the vices and virtues for the soul of man. The poem is an expansion of an earlier work by the same writer entitled *Hamartigenia* (Migne, *Patrol.*, Vol. 59, p. 1007) which is theological in character, an explanation of the origin of evil in refutation of the heresies of the day, notably that of Marcion, the dualist. The *Psychomachia* is an expansion of a portion of the *Hamartigenia*, where Anger, Superstition, Sadness, Strife and Luxury, war against the soul. The allegory in the later poem is carried out into great detail, being intended to represent the successive stages of Christian conflict amid the temptations of the world. A first struggle is necessary to overcome the worship of the pagan gods and to become a Christian. The next conflicts occur between Chastity and Lust, and between Patience and Wrath, resulting in victory for the virtues. Pride then attacks Humility, Righteousness, Temperance, Fasting, Shame and Simplicity. But a pit is dug for Pride by Treachery and by Hope the vice is slain. Then comes the battle between Luxury, who is driven in a chariot by Love scattering flowers, and Temperance who bears the standard of the cross. These Desires having been vanquished Avarice with her train appears and attacks the Christian under the guise of Frugality, but Almsgiving rescues the soul. The last battle is with Heresy, who is slain, and the soul is at peace.

For the popular theological confirmation of such a warfare one may turn to St. Augustine's *City of God*, the latter part of which was contemporary with the *Psychomachia* and written perhaps with the poem in mind. The 19th Book of the *City of God* reveals the dis cords between the heavenly and earthly cities and in the tenth chapter announcement is made of the rewards prepared for the saints: "There the virtues shall no longer be struggling against any vice or evil but shall enjoy the reward of victory, the eternal peace which no adversary shall disturb."

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Hist. of Latin Lit.*, G. A. Simcox, II., p. 360.

The *Psychomachia*,<sup>1</sup> sanctioned by the usages and doctrines of the church, became the model for a series of poems, generally moral and didactic in motive, called variously Bataille, Débat, Tournoiement, Disputoison and Pélérinage (v. *Lit. Fr. au Moyen Age*, par Gaston Paris, pp. 158, 159, 169, 227, 228). Among the later works of this class are the *Anticlaudianus* (12th century) by Alanus; *Débat du corps et d'l'âme* (12th century); *Tournoiement d'Antéchrist* (1235) by Huon de Méri, which contains the battle between the Vices and Virtues under the leadership of Antichrist and Christ respectively; *Pélérinage de la vie humaine* (1330-5), by Guil. De Deguiville, a favorite work in England and the prototype of Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress*; certain of the *Bestiaires* which satirize the vices of the time, as the *Renart le Nouvel* (1288), by Jacquemart Giélée, the animals of which, attacking the holy castle Maupertius, fight like the seven deadly sins with which they are for the first time mixed; episodes also found in the love poems, that series of *Ars d'Amour* which ended with the *Roman de la Rose*, as the battle for the rose in the *Roman* (*Lit. Fr.* G. Paris, p. 169).

Typical of these mediaeval works that deal with the war of the vices and virtues is the *Anticlaudianus, sive de Officio Viri Boni et Perfecti*,<sup>2</sup> one of the most important books of the period, and one familiar to Lydgate and his fellow monks. It was written by Alanus de Insulis, during the second half of the 12th century, to oppose an invective of Claudian against Rufinus, the prime minister of Theodosius the Great, who was represented as the embodiment of all that is vicious, having been perverted by all the passions of hell. The poem is well summarized by Mr. Steele in his edition of Lydgate's *Screeves* (note, p. 109) whose outline is here quoted.

"Nature, perceiving its failure in bringing about perfection, decides to join in one being all the virtues and excellences possible. She therefore summons all these allegorical personages, and lays

<sup>1</sup>The *De Consolatione Philosophiae* by Boethius may be mentioned as one other source of the battle motif. A French version of a part of this work is found in a poem called *De Fortune et de Felicite* which is said by Warton (II, p. 216) to be the source of the *Tournoyement de l'Antichrist* (c. 1228) by Huon de Meri, which contains a combat of the Vices and Virtues; this latter work was employed by Langland for the battle scene of the Antichrist at the close of *Piers the Plowman* (Skeat). Gaston Paris, however, thinks that most of these scenes of moral warfare may be referred to the *Psychomachia*.

<sup>2</sup>v. Migne, *Patrol.* t. 210, or *Anglo-Lat. Satir. Poets*, Roll's Series, ed. Wright. Cf. Lounsbury's *Chaucer Studies*, II, p. 348.

before them her plan. Prudence (Phronesis) and Reason remark that none of them can give to man the highest of all gifts—a soul, and that they must ask it from God. This mission is imposed on them; they at first refuse it, but Concord gets them to accept it. A car is made for them by the seven liberal arts, to which five horses representing the senses are yoked. Grammar lays the framework, Logic makes the axles of the wheels, Rhetoric adorns the frame with gems and flowers of silver, Arithmetic, Music, Geometry and Astronomy make the wheels, and Reason drives the chariot.

“They pass through the air, the clouds, the home of the evil spirits of the air, the spheres of the planets, and arrive at the firmament, when Reason faints and the senses become useless. Theology appears, and on the condition that Reason and the senses—except that of hearing—are abandoned, offers to guide Phronesis. The firmament, the empyrean heavens, the dwellings of saints, angels, and the Mother of God are next described. Here Prudence faints, but Faith revives her, and explains the mysteries of human destiny, grace, etc.

“God now orders Intelligence to frame a model of a soul such as was asked for, and making it, it is sent to Nature, who makes a body which Harmony, Music and Arithmetic fit for and join to the soul. All the allegorical divinities add a gift—even Nobility and Fortune bring theirs—which Wisdom checks and moderates.

“But Hell learning of this new creation resolves to destroy it, and Allecto unites all the vices against it. After a long battle the new man puts them all to flight, and inauguates upon the earth the reign of Justice and Happiness.”

The English books of Penance are many in number. Among the theological works in prose which treat in whole or in part the subject of the vices and virtues there are to be mentioned especially a Homily by Ælfric (Thorpe's ed. Ælfric Soc. II., p. 219), *Old English Homilies* (E. E. T. ed. Morris), the *Ancren Riwic* (Morton's ed. p. 198–204), Dan Michel's *Ayenbite of Inwyt* (Morris' ed. p. 16), *Vices and Virtues* (E. E. T. ed. Holthausen), Dan John Gaytryge's *Sermon on Shrift* and the *Mirroure of St. Edmund* (*Relig. P.* ed. Perry, p. 1, 15), a sermon by Wyclif (Works ed. by Arnold III., p. 225) and Chaucer's *Persones Tale*. Among the religious pieces in verse which treat the theme are Aldhelm's *De Octo Principalibus Vitiis* (in Latin, Migne, *Patrol.* Ser. Lat. 89, p. 282), the book of Penance added to the *Cursor Mundi* (E. E. T. pt. V., p. 1524).

*et seq.*), verses in *Religious Pieces* and in *Political Religious and Love Poems* (E. E. T. ed. Furnivall, p. 215), the *Manuel of Sins*, translated from a work by Bishop Grosseteste by Robert Mannyng, tracts in the Vernon MS. (ed. Horstmann, E. E. T.) entitled *How to Live Perfectly* No. XXXII.) and *The Spur of Love* (No. XXXV.), being translations from the popular *Speculum* of Edmund Rich, in the same MS. the *Dispute Between a Good Man and the Devil* (No. XXXVII.), *The Mirrour of the Periods of Man's Life in Hymns to the Virgin and Christ* (E. E. T. ed. Furnivall, p. 58), and a poem by William de Shoreham entitled *De Septem Mortalibus Peccatis* (Percy Soc., Vol. 28, p. 102), etc.

These treatises set forth the common theory of ethics as taught by the Latin Church. In classification and definition of the principal vices and virtues the works generally accord. There is occasional difference in the number, in the order of mention of the cardinals and in the names and number of the "branches" which spring from the parent stems.

The English Benedictine monks, following the older continental system, enumerate eight principal vices and virtues. Aelfric (Hom. ed. Thorpe, Vol. II, p. 219) sets in opposition, on the one hand the vices gifernys (greediness), galnyss (lust), gitsung (covetousness), weanet (anger) unrotnys (discontent), asolcennys oddē aemelhys (sloth or aversion), idel gylp (vain-glory), and modignys (pride); on the other hand the healing virtues gemetegung (moderation), clænnys (chastity), cystignys (bounty) gedyld (patience), gastlicer blis (ghostly joy), anräednys (steadfastness), lufe (love) and eadmodnys (humility).

In the mediaeval treatises the number of each class is regularly seven. The classification in the Parable of the Castle of Love in the *Cursor Mundi* (ll. 10040-10052) is the following: pride, envie, glotony, lust, gredines, wreth, hevynes, with the corresponding virtues, buxummes, charite, abstinenſ, chastite, liberality, mekenes, and gostly gladnes. In the *Cursor Mundi's Book of Penance* the list is: pride, envy, wraþe, slauþe, couatise, glotori and drunkenhede, lichery; and mekeness, loue, thalmodenes, gastely ioy, lele of hert and fre of gyft, abstinence and sobirte, chastite.

*The Ayenbite of Inȝyt* has in one place (p. 16 and 123) prede, envye, wreþe, sleauþe, icinge (avarice) couatyse, glotounye, lecherie; and for virtues the Pauline triad of beleave, hope and charite, and the cardinals of the "yealde philosofes" sleyþe (prudence) temper-

ance, strengþe, and dom (justice); in another place (p. 159) prede, enuye, felhede (hate), slacnes, scarsnes, lecherie, glotounyé and boyssamnes (humility) loue, mildenes, proues, larges, chastete, sobrete.

In the *Mirroure of St. Edmund* occur pryde, envy, ire, slouth, couetyse, glotony, lechery; and wysdom, vndirstandynge, consaile, stalworthenes, cunnyng, pete, drede of Godde, four of which are said to be needful for the active life and three for the contemplative life. Dan Jon Gaytryge's sermon recounts the regular vices and for virtues, trouthe, hope and charyte, the theological virtues, and ryghtwysesenes, sleghte (prudence), strenghe, and methe (temperance), the natural virtues. The Latin titles occur in *Gyf me Lysens to Lyve in Ease (Pol., Rel., and Love)* P. E. E. T. ed. Furnivall p. 215) superbia, invidia, ira, avoryssia, accidia, gula, luxuria, with the corresponding umylitas, carytas, amor cum pacientia, vigilate et orate, elymosina, abstinaunce, chastite. In the tract *How to Live Perfectly* (Vernon MS. E. E. T. No. 32) the remedies for sin are the Seven Blessings of the Gospel and the medicine for the sins are Wisdom, Understanding, Strength, Counsel, Wit, Pity, Fear of God.

Chaucer's list in the *Persones Tale* is pride, envye, ire, accidie, avarice, glotenye, leccherie; and hunilite, love, mansuetude and pacience, strengthe, misericorde and pite, abstinence, and chastite. Gower employs the same classification in his *Confessio Amantis*.

The most original treatise on the theme is perhaps Wyclif's tract on the *Seven Deadly Sins* (*Works*, ed. Arnold III, p. 119). The cardinals are the conventional ones but the condemnation of the practical sins of the clergy and people is from the Lollard point of view. The sins have this origin: “þe fende, and þo worlde, and monnis owne flesche, stiren hym to couyte ageynes God’s wille. And so ich one takes at other, and þese make seven. Pride, envye, and wrath ben synnes of þo fende; wrathe, slouthe, and avarice ben synnes of þe world; avarice, and glotenye, and þo synne of lechorye ben synnes of þo flesche” (p. 121). These are thus defined: “Pride is wicked liif of a monnis hyenesse;” “Envye is unordynel wille of mon to his neghtbore;” “Wratre is unskillful wille of vengeance;” Slouthe is “slouthe in God’s service;” Covetise is “avarice of worldly godis;” “Glutonye falles þen to mon, when he takes mete or drink more þen profites to his soule;” “Lechorye stondis in þis þing, þat mon mysusis lymes or powers of

his body, þat God haves ordeyned unto men for his kyndely gendrure" (p. 121 *et seqq.*)

In the more imaginative treatises various mystical and allegorical features appear. Chaucer's Parson pictures the life of God's chosen as a pathway filled with stumbling blocks. In the *Mirror of the Periods of Man's Life* a man is tempted from birth to age. In *Gyf me Lysens to Lyve in Ease* the sins are as wounds to be healed by medicines in the form of plasters and herbs, the remedial virtues. In *Piers the Plowman* the sins are the muck with which Haukyn, the active man, has soiled his coat (Pas. xiii). Often sin is described as a tree with branches and twigs as in the *Ayenbite of Inwyt*. When personified the sins may come as warriors in armor on horse or a foot, as in the Parable of the Castle of Love in the *Cursor Mundi*, or as in Lydgate's *Assembly of Gods*, Spenser's *Faery Queene*, Fletcher's *Purple Island* and Bunyon's *Holy War*. In the moral play, *The World and the Child*, the vices are exhibited as seven kings. Chaucer in the "A B C" laments that he is chased by "theves seven." Dunbar pictures the sins as dancers down in hell. Gower assigns the vices to a lover. Langland describes the virtues as "sisters," Pride alone among the vices being personified as a woman. Dan Michel declares Pride to be the devil's own daughter. In the *Sawles Ward* the cardinal virtues are the daughters of the lord of the house. In the *Ancren Riwle* each sin is symbolized by an animal: Pride by a Lion, Envy by an Adder, Wrath by a Unicorn, Lechery by a Scorpion, Avarice by a Fox, Gluttony by a Sow, Sloth by a Bear. The *Ayenbite of Inwyt* presents most mystical features: St. John in a vision saw a beast come out of the sea having a leopard's body, a bear's feet, a lion's throat, and it had seven heads and ten horns. This beast, explains Michel, betokeneth the devil who cometh from the sea of hell; its guile is denoted by the leopard's spots, his strength by the bear's feet, his cruelty by the lion's throat. The seven heads are the seven deadly sins and the ten horns the guilts of the commandments.

Without exception these writings accord in assigning to Pride the first place among the sins. Pride, said Ælfric, is "ord and ende ælces yfeles : se geworhte englas to deoflum and ælcre synne anginn is modignys." Pride in the *Cursor Mundi* is the chief sin that fights against Love: it is said that Lucifer fell by pride, that it is fouler than any devil in hell. *The Ayenbite of Inwyt* pictures Pride as the devil's own daughter, the sin of Lucifer and the angels, the first to assail

our Lord and the last to abandon Him. In *Gyf me Lysens to Lyve in Ease*, Pride is the first wound “more bytter than ever was gall.” By Wyclif Pride is considered to be the chief sin, being accorded to the Fiend. Said Gower “Pride is the heaved of all sinne” (I, p. 153). Barclay, at the beginning of the period of the Reformation, wrote of Pride that it is

“A vyce so moche abhomynable  
That it surmountyth without any fable  
All other vices in furour and vlynes  
And of all synne is it rote and maystres.”

— *Ship of Fools*, II, p. 159.

So Pride leads the dance of the sins in hell in Dunbar’s poem. It was the first to receive punishment in the *Shepheard’s Kalendar*. It cast Satan and the rebel angels out from heaven in Milton’s *Paradise Lost*. With Shakespeare it appears as ambition :

“By that sin fell the angels.” *Henry VIII*, III, 2, 441.

The consensus of mankind seems then to be written by Sir Thomas Browne that Pride is “the first and father sin, not only of man but of the devil ; a vice whose name is comprehended in a monosyllable, but in its nature not circumscribed with a world (Works, II, p. 435).

Turning from the theological treatises on the moralities, and taking up the works of real artistic value wherein the imagination of writers was truly kindled by a perception of the poetic capacities of the theme of battle and pilgrimage, we enter a most important field, perhaps to be called, when considering the actual epical and dramatic development of the theme, the most important field in early English literature. The many chivalric Romances would be included in the survey, perhaps also the earlier *Guthlac*. With a more specific treatment is the long series beginning with Bishop Grosseteste’s *Chateau d’amour*, which received several translations at the hands of later writers, continuing in the parable of the Castle of Love in the *Cursor Mundi*, the English *Bestiares*, the Moral-plays, Langland’s *Piers the Plowman*, Gower’s *Confessio Amantis*, perhaps the *Romaunt of the Rose*, Lydgate’s *Assembly of Gods*, Hawes’s *Pastime of Pleasure*, Dunbar’s *Dance of the Sins*, Barclay’s *Ship of Fools* and *Mirroure of Good Manners*, the anonymous *Shepheard’s Kalendar*, religious pieces of the type of the *Mirroure of the Periods of Man’s Life*, Spenser’s *Faery Queene*, John Day’s *Peregrinatio Scholastica*, Bernard’s *Isle of Man*, and, last of these stirring allegories, Fletcher’s *Purple Island*.

(1633), and Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress* (1678) and *Holy War* (1682).

In almost the earliest teaching on the subject of sin, in Aelfric's Homily on Midlent Sunday (ed. Thorpe, II, 212) the Christian life is described as a warfare. In the homilies the word commonly used for Virtues was *mihtan* (*Old-Eng. Hom.* I, p. 105), it being explained that by God's help, if fight were keen, the devilish sins would be overcome (p. 107).<sup>1</sup> The *Psychomachia* of Prudentius was known to the English monks as it is referred to by Beda in his *De Ratione Metrica* as the book "quem de virtutum vitiorumque pugna heroico carmine composuit." There is an echo of its triumph in *Guthlac* where the hero meets in deadly combat with Satan and his troops of sin-smiths that roar and rage like wild beasts. In the manner of the *Psychomachia* Aldhelm wrote in Latin his *De Octo Principalibus Vitiis* (Migne, *Patrol. Lat. Ser.*, 89, p. 282) arraying the opposing forces in battle form.

For this warfare man was given the gift of Power. This is a Virtue described by Dan Michel (*Ayenbite of Invyt*, p. 169) as a tree with seven boughs which betokened the seven battles that the Christian must wage. This Christian battle is again likened by Michel to the gladiatorial fights at Rome, wherein those who desired fame must overcome all who are sent against them by the master of the field; the holy Christ is the master who suffers no one to be tried above his strength. Bishop Grosseteste, employing the chivalric idea, figures Love as a strong castle standing high on a polished rock. The castle is enclosed by four stone walls and a deep moat, and fortified with four towers and seven barbicans. A clear, all healing well springs from the central tower. Within the tower is a brilliant throne. Being interpreted, the castle is a shield to the human soul. The rock is Mary's heart. The four towers are the cardinal Virtues, Strength, Skill, Rightfulness, and Temperance. The seven barbicans are the seven virtues that receive the attacks of the deadly sins. The well is Mary's mercy. The throne is Christ. This figuration, so beautiful in its symbolism, caught the fancy of succeeding writers. The castle betokens refuge and strength and victory. As a symbol of the Virgin Mary it is employed in the *Cursor Mundi*, in the *Abbaye of Saynte Spirite (Relig. Pieces*, ed. Perry, E. E. T. p. 49) in a miracle play entitled *Originale de Sancta Maria Magdalena* (v. Collier, *Hist. Dr.* P. II, p. 153-6) and in Lydgate's *Life of St. Mary*.

<sup>1</sup> Virtue is also called *thewe* in Gaytryge's *Sermon*, p. 10.

In Langland's vision the tower on the toft, partly drawn from Grosseteste's *Chateau d'amour*, is the abode of Truth or God the Father (v. Prol. l. 14; Pass. v. ll. 594 *et seq.*). Grace is the doorward there and seven sisters the porters of the posterns, Abstenence, Humilitate, Charite, Chestite, Pacience, Pees, and Largenesse. Mercy, or the Virgin Mary, mediates between the sinful ones at the gates and Christ and the Father. The chief battle in Langland's poem is that waged against the church of Unity (Pass. xx) by Antichrist and seven giants. Sloth and Avarice lead the assault. Peace bars the gates. But the virtues sleep and Conscience is forced to become a pilgrim over the world, seeking the Plowman. In a 13th century homily, *Sawles Warde*, man is represented as a castle inhabited by Wit, his wife Will, five servants, the five senses, and four daughters, the cardinal virtues.

Among the Moral-plays the *Castle of Perseverance* well illustrates the prevailing conception. The play was performed during the reign of Henry VI., but it is thought from its completeness that it must have had predecessors of the same kind (Collier, *Hist. Dr. P.*, II. p. 200 *et seq.*). Humanum Genus has been conducted by Good Angels to the Castle of Perseverance, which is under the wardship of the Seven Virtues. The Seven Deadly Sins attack the castle but are repulsed by the Virtues, being made "blak and blo" by the beating of roses which Charity and Patience fling from the walls. "Drery Death" alone has power over Humanum Genus whose soul is at last saved by the grace of Deity.

The later development of the theme needs only to be mentioned here. The *Faery Queene* was a natural evolution of the mediæval chivalric idea. Though the theological dogmatism is abandoned mankind is yet in the wilderness of this world, beset by sins on every side. In Book II. there is set forth the struggle of the Soul against its enemies. In Mammon's Cave the World is overcome. Arthur prevails against the Devil in the person of Maleger, the captain of the vices. Guyon, in the bower of Acrasia, resists the temptations of the Flesh. The ninth canto shadows forth the struggle of the Soul within the body. Milton and Bunyan picture the redemptive system from the Protestant point of view. For the first time in Milton's *Paradise Regained* the struggle is pictured as being withdrawn within the self—this is the beginning of the modern treatment of the theme. But Bunyan writes directly in the manner of the "old fables" that dealt with "Mansoul's wars."

One of the last of these microcosmic encounters and the most ingenious and involved of all, is the *Purple Island*, published in 1633 by the poet Fletcher, who is called by Francis Quarles "the Spenser of this age." The Purple Island is Man. Its prince is Intellect. The Senses constitute a pentarchy. Cosmos captains the rout of Vices that attack the Island. The Virtues defend and conquer (v. cantos vii-viii, ix-x, xi-xii).

Considering the possibilities of Lydgate's theme it is to be regretted that he did not grapple with it more successfully. His work exhibits intelligence, some degree of imagination, but is devoid of passion and aesthetic apprehension. He marshaled numberless hosts, his design was so comprehensive as to include the upper firmament, the lowest hell, and the earth and man, yet the *Assembly of Gods* is almost the least of the poems attempting to portray the Holy War.



## THE ASSEMBLY OF GODS.

By DON JOHN LYDGATE.

\*Here foloweth the Interpretacion of the names of goddys & goddesses as ys rehersyd in þis tretyse folowyng as poetes wryte:

|           |                                               |            |                                      |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------|------------|--------------------------------------|
| PHEBUS:   | ys as moche to say as þe Sonne.               | CERES:     | Goddesse of Corne.                   |
| APOLLO:   | ys the same or ellys God of Lyght.            | CUPIDO:    | God of Loue.                         |
| MORPHEUS: | Shewer of Dremes.                             | OTHIEA:    | Goddess of Wysdom.                   |
| PLUTO:    | God of Hell.                                  | FORTUNE:   | þe variaunt Goddess.                 |
| MYNOS:    | Iuge of Hell.                                 | PAN:       | God of Sheperdes.                    |
| CERBERUS: | Porter of Hell.                               | ISYS:      | Goddesse of Frute.                   |
| EOLUS:    | þe Wynde or God of þe Eyre.                   | NEPTUNUS:  | God of the See.                      |
| DIANA:    | Goddesse of Woode & Chace.                    | MYNZERUE:  | Goddesse of Batayll, or of Harueyst. |
| PHEBE:    | þe Mone or Goddess of Watyres.                | BACHUS:    | God of Wyne.                         |
| AURORA:   | Goddess of þe Morow or the Spryng of the Day. | MERCURIUS: | God of Langage.                      |
| MARS:     | God of Batayll.                               | VENUS:     | Goddesse of Loue.                    |
| IUBYTER:  | God of Wysdom.                                | DISCORDE:  | Goddesse of Debate and Stryfe.       |
| IUNO:     | Goddesse of Rychesse.                         | ATTROPOS:  | Dethe.                               |
| SATURNE:  | God of Colde.                                 |            |                                      |

---

I

Whan Phebus in the Crabbe had nere hys cours ronne  
And toward the leon his iourne gan take,  
To loke on Pictagoras speere I had begonne,  
Sytting all solytary alone besyde a lake,  
Musyng on a maner how that I myght make  
Reason & Sensualyte in oon to acorde;  
But I cowde nat bryng about that monacorde.

I When Phebus had nearly run his course in the Crab, alone beside a lake, I was musing how I might make Reason and Sensuality to accord.

7

\*Omitted in B. C follows the Camb. MS., closing: Here endyth the Interpretacion of the names of Goddis and Goddesses as is reheryd in thys treatyse folowyng.

2

For long er I myght, slepe me gan oppresse 8

In heaviness  
I fell asleep.

So ponderously, I cowde make noon obstacle.

Morpheus  
enters and  
takes me by  
the sleeve.

In myne heede was fall suche an heuynesse,

I was fayne to drawe to myn habytacle, 11

To rowne with a pylow me semyd best tryacle,

So leyde I me downe my dysse to releue,

Anone came in Morphens & toke me by the sleue. 14

3

And as I so lay half in a traunse, 15

bidding me  
arise and  
attend the  
Court of  
Minos.

Twene slepyng and wakynge he bad me aryse,

For he seyde I must yeue attendaunce

To the gret Court of Mynos, the iustyse. 18

Me nought anaylyd ayene hym to sylogysse :

For hit ys oft seyde by hem that yet lyues

He must nedys go that the denell dryues. 21

4

When I sy no bettyr but I must go 22

I obey and  
go with him  
towards the  
parlament of  
Pluto and  
Minos.

I seyde I was redy at hys commaundment,

Whedyr that he wold me leede to or fro.

So vp I aroose and forthe with hym went. 25

Tyll he had me brought to the parlyament,

Where Pluto sate and kept hys estate,

And with hym Mynos, the luge desperate. 28

5

But as we thedyrward went by the way, 29

On the way I  
ask him his  
name. He  
replies,  
“Morpheus.”

I hym besought hys name me to tell.

“Morpheus,” he seyde, “thow me call may.”

“A syr,” seyd I, “than where do ye dwell. 32

In heuen or in erthe outhier elles in hell?”

“Where do you  
dwell?” He  
answers, “in  
Fantasy.”

“Nay,” he seyde, “myñ abydyng most comonly

Ys in a lytta corner callyd Fantasy.” 35

6

Having arrived  
in Hell,  
Cerberus, the  
porter, brings  
thither Eolus  
in chains,  
charged by  
Neptune and  
Diana with  
traitorous  
action.

And as sone as he these wordys had sayd. 36

Cerberus, the porter of hell, with hys cheyne

Brought theder Eolus in raggys euyll arayd.

Agayn whona Neptunus and Diana dyd compleyne 39

Seying thus, “O Mynos, thow luge souereyne,

Yeue thy crnell ingement ageyn thys traytour soo

That we may haue cause to preyse thy lord Pluto.” 42

7

- Then was there made a proclamacion,  
In Plutoys name commaundyd silence  
Vpon the peyne of strayte correccion,  
That Diana and Neptunus myght haue audience  
To declare heſ greefe of the gret offence  
To theym done by Eolus, wheron they compleynyd.  
And to begyñ Diana was constreynyd.

43 Silence is proclaimed by  
Pluto that  
Neptune and  
Diana may  
declare their  
grievance.  
46 Diana, first,  
begins to  
speak,

8

- Whyche thus began as ye shall here  
Seying in thys wyse, "O thow lord Pluto,  
With thy Iuge Mynos, sytting with the in fere,  
Execute youſ fury vppon Eolus so  
Accordyng to the offence that he to me hath do,  
That I haue no cause forther to apele,  
Whiche yef I do shall nat be for youſ wele.

50  
53 demanding  
from Minos  
the execution  
of fury upon  
Eolus,

9

- "Remembre furst howe I a goddesse pure  
Ouer all desertys, forestes and chases,  
Haue take the guydyng and vndyr my cure.  
Thys traytour Eolus, hath many of my places  
Dystroyed with hys blastes and dayly me manaces.  
Where any wood ys he shall make hyt pleyn  
Yef he to hys lyberte may resorte ayeyñ.

57  
60 the traitor, who  
had destroyed  
her forests,

10

- "The grettest trees that any man may fynde  
In forest to shade the deere for her comfort,  
He breketh hem asondre or rendeth hem roote & rynde  
Out of the erthe—thys ys hys dysport,  
So that the deere shall haue no resort  
Withyn short tyme to no maner shade ;  
Wheſ thorough the game ys lykly to fade.

64  
67 breaking and  
uprooting the  
trees, where-  
fore the deer  
are without  
shelter.

11

- "Whyche to my name a reproche syngler  
Shuld be for euer whyle the world last,  
And to all the goddes an hygh dyspleſer  
To see the game so dystroyed by hys blast ;  
Wherfore a remedy puruey in hast,  
And let hym be punysshyd aftyr hys offence.  
Consydeſ the cryme and yeue youſ sentence."

71  
74 This brings  
reproach to  
Diana and dis-  
pleasure to all  
the gods, and  
requires  
punishment.

77

12

And when thus Diana had made her compleynt      78  
 To Mynos, the luge, in Plutoys presence,

Came forthe Neptunus, with vysage pale & feynt,  
 Neptune next rehearses his complaint to Minos.

Desyryng of fauour to haue audyence,      81  
 Saying thus, "Pluto to thy magnyfycence  
 I shall reherse what thys creature  
 Eolus hath dooñ to me out of mesure.

13

"Thow knowest well that I haue the charge      85  
 Ouer all the see, and theſof god I am,

No shyp may sayle, keruell, boote ner barge,  
 Gret karyk, nor hulke with any lyuyng man,  
 But yef he haue my safe condyte than,

Who me offendeth withyn my iurysdicion  
 Oweth to submyt hym to my correcccion.

14

"But in as mekyll as hit ys now soo      92  
 That ye hym here haue as your pryonere,

I shall yow shew my compleynt too,  
 Wherfore I pray yow that ye woll hit here,  
 And let hym nat escape out of your daungere,

Tyll he haue made full seethe and recompence  
 For hurt of my name thorough thys gret offence.

15

"Furst, to begynne, thys Eolus hath oft      99  
 Made me to retourne my course agayn̄ nature

With hys gret blastys, when he hath be a loft,  
 And chargyd me to labouř ferre out of mesure,  
 That hit was gret merueyle how I myght endure.

The [foom] of my swet, wyll hit testyfy,  
 That on the see bankes lythe betyn full hy.

16

"Secundly, where as my nature ys      106  
 Bothe to ebbe and flowe and so my course to kepe,

Oft of myn entent hath he made me mys,  
 Where as I shuld haue fyllyd dykes depe

At a full watyr I might nat thedyf crepe  
 Before my seson came to retorne ayeyne,  
 And then went I fastyf than 1 wold certeyne.

but Eolus causes him to turn against his course,

and ebb and flow out of his season.

78

81

84

85

88

91

92

95

98

99

102

105

106

109

112

17

“Thus he hath me dryuen ayeñ myn entent  
And contrary to my course naturall.  
Where I shuld haue be he made me be absent  
To my gret dyshonouř, & in especiall  
Oo thyng he vsyd that worst was of all,  
For where as I my sauegard grauntyd,  
Ay in that cost he comonly hauntyd.

113 This Eolus had done to his dishonour.

18

“Of verrey pure malyce and of sylfe wyll,  
Theym to dystroy in dyspyte of me  
To whom I promysyd, bothe in good and yll,  
To be heř protectouř in aduersyte,  
That to theym shuld fall opon the see,  
And euyn sodenly, er they coude beware,  
With a sodeyn pyry, he lappyd hem in care.

120 Out of very malice Eolus destroyed those to whom he had granted protection,

123

126

19

“And full oft sythe with hys boystous blast,  
Er they myght beware he drofe hym on the sande.  
And other whyle he brak top seyle and mast,  
Whyche causyd theym to perysse eř they came to lande.  
Then cursyd they the tyme that euer they me fande.  
Thus among the pepyll lost ys my name  
And so by hys labouř put I am to shame.

127 or else brought them to wreck; wherefore his name is held in dishonor.

20

“Consydre thys mateř and ponder my cause;  
Tendre my compleynt as rygouř requyreth;  
Shew forthe your sentence with a breef clause.  
I may nat long tary, the tyme fast expyreth,  
The offence ys gret, wherfore hyt desyreth  
The more greuous peyne and hasty iugement.  
For offence dooň wylfully woll noon auysment.”

134 The great offense requires a grievous punishment.

140

21

And, when the god Pluto awhyle had hym bethought,  
He rownyd with Mynos to know what was to do.  
Then he seyd opynly, “Loke thou fayle nought  
Thy sentence to yeue without favour so,  
Lyke as thou hast herde the causys meuyd the to;  
And so euenly dele twene these partyes tweyn,  
That nooň of hem haue cause on the other compleyñ.”

Pluto advises Minos to judge fairly between the parties.

144

22

- Minos asks for further charges, Then seyd Mynos full indyfferently, 148  
 To Dyane & Neptunus, "Ys theſt any more  
 That ye wyll declare agayn hym oþynd?"  
 "Nay in dede," they seyde, "we kepe nooñ in store. 151  
 We haue seyde ynough to punysshē hym sore.  
 Yef ye in thy matyr be nat parciall,  
 Remembre youñ name was wont to be egall." 154

23

- and wishes to hear what Eolus can say for himself. "Well then," seyd Mynos, "now let vs here 155  
 What thys boystous Eolus for hymself can sey,  
 For here, *prima facie*, to vs he doth apere  
 That he hath offendyd—no man can sey nay. 158  
 Wherfore thou Eolus, without more delay,  
 Shape vs an answeñ to thyne accusation.  
 And ellys I most procede opon thy iugement." 161

24

- A messenger enters from Apollo inviting the gods to a banquet and And euyn as Eolus was onwarde to haue seyde 162  
 For hys excuse, came yn a messynger  
 Fro god Apollo to Pluto, and hym prayde  
 On hys behalfe that he without daungere 165  
 Wold to hym come & bryng with hym [in] feere  
 Diane & Neptunus on to hys banquet;  
 And yef they dysdeynyd hymſylf he wold hem fet. 168

25

- requests the suspension of judgment upon Eolus, if Diana and Neptune should be therewith content. Moreouer he seyde to the god, Apollo 169  
 Desyryd to haue respyte of the iugement  
 Of Eolus, bothe of Mynos & Pluto.  
 So Dyane and Neptunus were theſtwith content, 172  
 And yef they were dysposyd to assent  
 That he myght come vnto hys presence,  
 He hit desyryd to know hys offence. 175

26

- The Court is therefore dismissed. "What sey ye hereto," seyd Pluto to hem tweyn, 176  
 "Wyll ye bothe assent that hit shall be thus?"  
 "Ye," seyde the goddesse, "for my part certeyn."  
 "And I also," seyde thys Neptunus. 179  
 "I am well plesyd," quod thys Eolus.  
 And when they had a whyle thus togedyr spoke,  
 Pluto commaundyd the court to be broke. 182

27

And then togedyf went they in fere,  
 Pluto & Neptunus ledyng the goddesse,  
 Whom folowyd Cerberus with hys pryonere.  
 And alther last with gret heuynesse  
 Came I & Morphewus to the forteresse  
 Of the god Apollo vnto hys basket,  
 Where many goddyns & goddesse met.

28

When Apollo sye that they were come,  
 He was ryght glad and prayed hem to syt.  
 "Nay," seyd Diane, "thys ys all and some.  
 Ye shall me pardone, I shall nat syt yet.  
 I shall fyrist know why Eolus abyte  
 And what execucion shall on hym be do  
 For hys offence." "Well," seyd Apollo,

29

"Madame, ye shall hane all youf plesere,  
 Syth that hit woll none other wyse be.  
 But furst I yow pray let me the matef here,  
 Why he ys brought in thys perplexyte."  
 "Well," seyd Pluto, "that shall ye sone se."  
 And gan to declare even by and by  
 Bothe her compleyntes ordynatly.

30

And when Apollo had herd the report  
 Of Pluto, in a maner smylyng he seyd,  
 "I see well, Eolus, thou hast small comfort  
 Thy sylf to excuse; thou mayst be dysmayde  
 To here so gret compleyntes ayene the layde.  
 That natwifhstandyng, yef thou can sey ought  
 For thyne owne wele, sey and tary nougħt."

31

"Forsythe," seyd Eolus, "yef I had respyte,  
 Heſ to an awnswere cowde I counterfete.  
 But to hane heſ grace more ys my delyte.  
 Wherfore, I pray you all for me entrete,  
 That I may, by youf request, heſ good grace gete.  
 And what pyne or greef ye for me prouyde,  
 Without any grogyng I shall hit abyde."

183 Pluto, Neptune and Diana, Cerberus and Eolus, Morpheus and I, come to the palace of Apollo, where many gods and goddesses are met.

189

190 Apollo welcomes them with gladness.

193 Diana refuses to sit until judgment is pronounced on Eolus.

196

197

200 Pluto recounts the complaints against Eolus,

203

204

207 who is requested to give his excuses.

210

211 Eolus speaks suing for the grace of Diana.

214

217

32

Apollo pleads  
for Eolus that  
the goddess  
show pity, on  
account of his  
great sorrow,

- “Lo, good Madame,” seyd god Apollo. 218  
 “What may he do more but sew to *your* grace.  
 Beholde how the teares from hys eyen go.  
 Hit ys satysfaccion half for hys trespass. 221  
 Now gloryous goddesse shewe *your* pyteous face  
 To thys poore prysoner at my request.  
 All we for youſ honouſ thynke thus ys best. 224

33

and assures  
her if she for-  
give Eolus and  
he afterwards  
rebel that for  
every tree  
destroyed a  
hundred shall  
grow

- “And yef hit lyke yow to do in thys wyse, 225  
 And to foryeue hym clerely hys offense.  
 Oon thyng surerly I will yow promyse.  
 Yef he eft rebelle and make resystence 228  
 Or dysobey vnto your ſentence.  
 For euery tree that he maketh fall.  
 Out of the erthe an hundred aryſe shall. 231

34

for the pro-  
tection of  
game.

- “So that youſ game shall nat dyscreſe 232  
 For lak of shade, I dar vndyrtake.”  
 “Well, syſ Apollo,” seyde ſhe than, “woll I cefe  
 Of all my rancour and mery with yow make.” 235  
 And then god Neptunus of hys mater ſpake,  
 Seyng thus, “Apollo, though Diana hym releſe,  
 Yet ſhall he ſu to me to haue hys pefe.” 238

35

Diana grants  
release.

For Neptune's  
case Phebe is  
accepted as  
arbiter.

- “A,” seyde Apollo, “ye wend I had foryete 239  
 Yow for my lady Diane, the goddesſe.  
 Nay, thynke nat ſo, for I woll yow entrete  
 As well as hyr without long procesſe. 242  
 Wyll ye agre that Pheb[e] your maſtrefſe  
 May haue the guydying of your varyaunce?”  
 “I ſhall abyde,” quod he, “her ordynaunce.” 245

36

Apollo prays  
the gods and  
goddesses to  
fall to the  
banquet.

Athena  
requests that  
due order be  
preserved.

- “Well then,” quod Apollo, “I pray you goddesſe all. 246  
 And goddesſe eke, that be heere preſent,  
 That ye compaygnably wyll aboorde fall.”  
 “Nay then,” seyde Othea, “hit ys nat conuenyent, 249  
 A dew ordre in euery place ys expedyent  
 To be had, wherfore ye may nat let  
 To be youſ owne marchall at youſ owne bankeſt.” 252



42

- With him sits  
Ceres in a gar-  
ment of sack-  
cloth embroid-  
ered with  
sheaves and  
sickles.  
And next in ordre was set by hys syde 288  
Ceres, the goddesse, in a garment  
Of sak clothe made with sleues large & wyde,  
Embrowderyd with sheues & sykelys bent. 291  
Of all maner greynes she sealyd the patent,  
In token that she was the goddesse of corne.  
Olde poetys sey she bereth the hernest horne. 294

43

- Next Cupid,  
dressed in  
gallant array  
with jewels, so  
that the palace  
shone. He  
sits embracing  
Ceres with one  
arm.  
Then was there set the god Cupido, 295  
All fresshe & galaunt & costlew in aray.  
With ouches & rynges he was beset so  
The paleys therof shone as though hit had be day. 298  
A kerchyef of plesaunce stood ouer hys helme ay.  
The goddesse Ceres he lookyd in the face  
And with oon arme he hyr dyd embrace. 301

44

- With him is  
Athena, clad  
in purple with  
a pearly crown.  
Next to Cupido in ordyr by and by, 302  
Of worldly wysdom, sate the forteresse  
Callyd Othea, chyef grounde of polycy.  
Rewler of knyghthode, of Prudence the goddese. 305  
Clad all in purpuſ was she more & lesse,  
Safe oñ her hede a crowne theſt stood,  
Cowchyd with perles, oryent, fyne and good. 308

45

- Pluto next,  
environed in  
mist and  
clothed in a  
smoky net,  
smelling of  
fire and sul-  
phur.  
And next to her was god Pluto set, 309  
With a derke myst enuyrond all aboute,  
Hys clothynge was made of a smoky net.  
Hys colour was, bothe withyn & withoute, 312  
Foule, derke & dymme; hys eyen gret & stoute.  
Of fyre and sulphure all hys odour wase:  
That wo was me whyle I behelde hys fase. 315

46

- Fortune sits  
with him; she  
is dressed  
gaudily in  
green.  
Fortune, the goddesse, with her party face 316  
Was vnto Pluto next in ordre set.  
Varyaunt she was; ay in short space  
Hyr whele was redy to turne without let. 319  
Hyr gowne was of gawdy grene chamelet,  
Chaungeable of sondry dynverse colowres,  
To the condycyons accordyng of hyr shoures. 322

47

And by heſt sate though he vnworthy were,

The rewde god Pan, of ſheperdys the gyde,  
Clad in rusſet freſe, & breched lyke a bere,

With a gret tar box hangyng by hys syde.

A ſhepecrook in hys hand he ſparyd for no prydē.

And at hys feete lay a prykeryd curre.

He ratelyd in the throte as he had the murre.

48

Yſys, the goddesſe, bare hym company.

For at the table next ſhe ſat by hys syde,  
In a cloſe kyrtyll embrowderyd curiouſly,

With braunches & leues, brood, large & wyde,

Grene as any grefſe in the ſomertyde.

Of all maner frute ſhe had the gouernaunce.

Of ſauerys odoryferous was her ſuſtynaunce.

323 By her is god Pan dressed rudely, a tarbox by his ſide, a ſheepcrook in his hand,

326 at his feet a cur.

330 Iſys keeps him company in a dress embroidered with leaves and branches.

333

Next hyr was then god Neptunus ſet.

He ſauoryd lyke a fyſſheſt—of hym I ſpake before.

Hyt ſemyd by hys clothes as they had be wet. [ſcore.

Aboute hym, in hys gyrdyll ſtede, hyng fyſſhes many a

Of hys ſtraunge aray meruelyed I ſore.

A ſhyp with a toppe & ſeyle was hys crest.

Me thought he was gayly dysgysyd at that fest.

50

Then toke Mynerue, the goddesſe, her ſete

Joynthly to Neptunus, all in curas clad,

Gauntlettes on hyr handys, & ſabatouns on hyr fete.

She loked euer about as though ſhe had be inad.

An hamer and a ſythe on her hede ſhe had.

She weryd ii bokeſters, ooñ by her ſyde, [prydē.

That other ye wote where; thys was all her

344 With him sits Minerva, clad in armor, a hammer and ſcythe upon her head.

51 Then came the good Bachus, and by heſt ſet hym downe,

Holdyng in hys hande a cup full of wyne.

Of grene vyne leues he weryd a ioly crowne.

He was clad in cluſtres of grapes good and fyne.

A garland of yuy he chase for hys ſygne;

On hys hede he had a thredebare kendall hood;

A gymlot and a fauſet theſponon stood.

Bacchus sits by her, clad in grape cluſtres, a cup of wine in his hand. His ſign is a garland of yew.

357

52

With him sits Next hym sat Pheb[e], with hyf colour pale. 358  
 pale Phbe,  
 boasting of her  
 rule.

Fat she was of face but of complexyon feynt.  
 She seyde she rewlyd Neptunus and made hym to avale,  
 And ones in the moneth with Phebus was she meynt.  
 Also ne were she Ceres were ateynt.  
 Thus she sate & tolde the myght of hyf nature,  
 And on hyr hede she weryd a crowne of syluyn pure.

She wears a  
 silver crowne.

Mercury seats  
 himself next, a  
 god of golden  
 tongue. In  
 his hand he  
 has a box of  
 quicksilver.

Ioynlyt to her Mercurius tooke hys see 365  
 As came to hys course—wytnesse the zodyak.  
 He had a gyldyn tong, as fyll for hys degree.  
 In eloquence of langage he passyd all the pak, 368  
 For in hys talkyng no man cowde fynde lak.  
 A box with quyksyluer he had in hys hand,  
 Multyplyers know hit well in euery land. 371

His companion  
 is Venus,  
 bright of  
 chere, dressed  
 curiously, her  
 hair like gold  
 wire.

By him sate Dame Venus with colouf crystallyne, 372  
 Whoos long here shone as wyre of goold bryght.  
 Cryspe was her skyñ, hef eyen columbyne,  
 Rauysshdyd myñ hert her chere was so lyght. 375  
 Patronesse of plesaunce, be namyd well se myght.  
 A smokke was her wede, garnysshdyd curyously.  
 But aboue all other she had a wanton ey. 378

She wears a  
 copper crowne.  
 Between  
 Aurora and  
 Venus Apollo  
 sits him down.  
 He gives light  
 to the com-  
 pany. His  
 crown is of  
 gold.

On her hede she weryd a rede copyr crowne. 379  
 A nosegay she had made full pleasauntly.  
 Betwene her and Aurora, Apollo set hym downe.  
 With hys beames bryght he shone so feruently 382  
 That he therwith gladyd all the company.  
 A crowne of pure gold was on hys hede set,  
 In sygne that he was mastyr & lord of that banquet.

Waiting at the  
 table are poets  
 and philoso-  
 phers:  
 Cicero, Aris-  
 totle, Ptolemy,  
 Dorothe,  
 Diogenes,  
 Plato, Mes-  
 sala, Socrates,

Thus was the table set rownde aboute 386  
 With goddys & goddesses, as I haue yow tolde.  
 Awaytyng on the boorde was a gret route  
 Of sage phylosophyrs & poetes many folde. 389  
 Ther was sad Sychero & Arystotyll olde,  
 Tholome, Dorothe, with Dyogenes,  
 Plato, Messehala, & wyse Socrates. 392

55

56

## 57

|                                                 |     |                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sortes and Saphyrus with Hermes stood behynde.  | 393 | Sortes,<br>Saphyrus,<br>Hermes,<br>Avicen,<br>Averroes,<br>Galen,<br>Hypocras,<br>Esculapius,<br>Virgil,<br>Horace, Ovid |
| Auycen and Aueroys with hem were in fere.       |     |                                                                                                                          |
| Galyen & Ipocras, that physyk haue in mynde,    |     |                                                                                                                          |
| With helpe of Esculapion, toward hem drow nere. | 396 |                                                                                                                          |
| Virgyle, Orace, Ouyde and Omere,                |     |                                                                                                                          |
| Euclyde, and Albert yaue hef attendaunce,       |     |                                                                                                                          |
| To do the goddys and goddesses plesaunce.       | 399 | Euclid and<br>Albert.                                                                                                    |

## 58

|                                                       |     |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------------|
| Whore berdyd Orpheus was there with hys harpe         | 400 | Orpheus and |
| And as a poet musykall made he melody.                |     |             |
| Othyrr mynstrall had they none, safe Pan gan to carpe |     |             |
| Of hyslewde bagpype, whyche causyd the company        | 403 | Pan act as  |
| To lawe. Yet many mo thef were, yef I shuld nat ly,   |     | minstrels.  |
| Som yong, som olde, bothe bettyr and wersē,           |     |             |
| But mo of her names can I not reherse.                | 406 |             |

## 59

|                                                  |     |                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------------|
| Of all maner deyntees tnef was habundaunce,      | 407 |                                            |
| Of metys & drynkes foysone plenteuous.           |     |                                            |
| In came Dyscord to haue made varyaunce.          |     |                                            |
| But thef was no rome to set hyf in that hous.    | 410 | Discord enters<br>but can gain<br>no seat, |
| The goddys remembryd the scisine odyous          |     |                                            |
| Among the three goddesses that [s]he had wrought |     |                                            |
| At the fest of Peleus, wherfor they thought      | 413 |                                            |

## 60

|                                                  |     |                            |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------------------|
| They wold nat with hef dele in auenture          | 414 |                            |
| Lest she theym brought to som inconuenyent.      |     |                            |
| She, seyng thys, was wrothe out of mesure        |     | thence departs<br>in wrath |
| And in that gret wrethe out of the paleyce went, | 417 | meeting on the<br>way with |
| Seyng to hersylf that chere shuld /þey repent.   |     | Atropos,                   |
| And anone with Atropos happyd she to mete,       |     |                            |
| As he had bene a geste came in wyndyng shete.    | 420 |                            |

## 61

|                                                     |     |          |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|----------|
| She toke hym by the hande & rownyd in hys eare      | 421 |          |
| And told hym of the banquet that was so delicate,   |     |          |
| Howe she was resceuyd, what chere she had there,    |     |          |
| And howe euery god sate in hys estate.              |     | [date!?" |
| “Ys hit thus!” quod Atropos, “what in the deuylllys |     |          |
| “Well,” he seyde, “I see well howe the game gooth,  |     |          |
| Ones yet for youf sake shall I make hem wrooth.”    | 427 |          |

62

- And when she had hym all togedyr tolde, 428  
 From her he departyd and of hyr toke hys leue,  
 Seyng that for hyr sake hys wey take he wolde  
 In to the paleyce hys matyrs to meue, 431  
 And eñ he thens went he trowyd hem to greue  
 With suche tydynges as he shuld hem tell.  
 So forthe yn he went & spake wordys fell. 434

63

- He looks like  
a madman and  
salutes the  
company  
rudely, When he came in the presence of the goddes all, 435  
 As he had be woode he lookyd hym about.  
 His shiete from his body downñ he let fall,  
 And on a rewde maner he salutyd all the rout, 438  
 With a bold voyse, carpyng wordys stout.  
 But he spake all holow, as hit had be ooñ  
 Had spoke in another world þat had woo begooñ. 441

64

- Atropos makes  
his charge: He stood forthe boldly with grym countenaunce, 442  
 Saying in thyss wyse as ye shall here,  
 "All ye gret goddys yeue attendaunce  
 Vnto my wordys without all daungere. 445  
 Remembre howe ye made me youñ offycere  
 All tho with my dart fynally to chastyse  
 That yow dysobeyed or wold youñ law dyspysse. 448

65

- "And for the more sewerte ye seelyd my patent, 449  
 Yenyng me full poweñ soo to occupy,  
 Wherto I hane employed myñ entent  
 And that can Dame Nature well testyfy; 452  
 Yef she be examynyd she woll hit nat deny.  
 For when she forsaketh any creature,  
 I am ay redy to take hym to my cure. 455

66

- unto every  
man. "Thus hane I dewly, with all my diligence, 456  
 Executyd the offyce of olde antiquyte,  
 To me by yow grauntyd, by youñ comon sentence.  
 For I spared nooñ hygh nor low degre, 459  
 So that on my part no defaute hath be.  
 For as sone as any to me commytyd wase  
 I smete hym to the hert—he had nooñ other grase.

## 67

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |     |                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| “Ector of Troy, for all hys chyualry,<br>Alexaunder, the grete & myghty conquerour,<br>Iulius Cesar, with all hys company,<br>Dauid, nor Iosue, nor worthy Artouſt,<br>Charles the noble, that was so gret of honouſt,<br>Nor Iudas Machabee for all hys trew hert.<br>Nor Godfrey of Boleyñ cowde me nat astert.                               | 463 | All have fallen:<br>Hector,<br>Alexander,<br>Cæsar, David,<br>Joshua,<br>Arthur,<br>Charles,<br>Judas Machabeus,<br>Godfrey, |
| 68                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 466 |                                                                                                                              |
| “Nabugodonozor, for all hys gret prydē,<br>Nor the King of Egypt, cruell Pharao,<br>Iason, ne Hercules, went they neuſt so wyde,<br>Cosdras, Hanyball, nor gentyll Sypio,<br>Cirus, Achilles, nor many another mo,<br>For feyre or foule gat of me no grace.<br>But all be at the last I sesyd hem with my mace.                                | 469 | 470                                                                                                                          |
| 69                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 473 | Nebuchad-nezzar,<br>Pharao,<br>Jason, Hercules, Cosdras<br>Hannibal,<br>Scipio,<br>Cyrus and Achilles.                       |
| “Thus hav I brought euery creature<br>To an ende bothe man, fyſſhe, foule & beste,<br>And euery other thyng in whom Dame Nature<br>Hath any iuryſdiccion, oþher moſt or leſte,<br>Except oonly ooñ in whom your beheste<br>Ys to me broke; for ye me promysyd<br>That my myght of nooñ ſhuld haue be dyspysyd.                                  | 477 | All have been brought to their end except one.                                                                               |
| 70                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 480 |                                                                                                                              |
| “Wheſof the contrary, dar I well avowe,<br>Ys trew; for ooñ there ys that wyl nat apply<br>Vnto my correcccion nor in no wyſe bowe<br>To the dynt of my dart for doole nor destyny.<br>What comfort he hath, nor the cauſe why<br>That he ſo rebelleth, I can nat thynke of ryght [dyght].<br>But yef ye haue hym grauntyd your aldyrs saf con- | 483 | 484                                                                                                                          |
| 71                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 487 | This one the gods guard contrary to their agreement.                                                                         |
| “And yef ye ſo haue, then do ye nat as goddyns,<br>For a goddes wrytyng may nat reuersyd be.<br>Yef hit ſhuld nat yeue n̄ peseſcoddys<br>For graunt of youñ patent of offyce neñ of fee.<br>Wherfore in thys mateř dō me equyte<br>Accordyng to my patent, for tyll thys be do<br>Ye haue no more my ſeruyce nor my good wyll lo.”              | 491 | Therefore justice is demanded.                                                                                               |

## 72

And when all the goddes had Attropos herde, 498

The gods all promise their aid in destroyng the man,  
As they had be woode they brayde vp at oonyngs

And seyde they wold nat reste tyll he were conqueryd,  
Takeñ and dystroyed, boody, blood and boonys;

And that they swere gret othes for the noonys

Her lawe to dyspyce, that was so malapert.

They seyde he shuld be taught for to be so pert. 504

## 73

"Well," seyde Apollo, "yef he on erthe bee, 505

Wyth my brennyng chare I shall hym confound."

"In feythe," quod Neptunus, "& yef he kepe the see,

He may be full sure he shall sone be drownd." 508

"A syr," seyd Mars, "thys hane we well fownd

That any dysobeyed owre godly precept,

We may well thynke we hane to long slept. 511

## 74

"But neuerthelese where I may hym fynde 512

With thundre and leyte about I shall hym chase."

"And I," quod Saturnus, "before and behynde

With my bytter colde shall shew hym hard grase." 515

"Well," seyd Mercurius, "yef I may see hys fase,

For euer of hys speche I shall hym depryue:

So that hym were bettyr be dede than a lyue." 518

## 75

"Ye," quod Othea, "yet may he well be 519

In the eyre where he woll & ax yow no leue,

Wherfore, my counsell ys that all we

May entrete Neptunus hys rancour to foryeue, 522

And then I dowe not Eolus wyll hym myschewe:

So may ye be sewre he shall yow nat escape,

And elles of all youñ angre woll he make but a iape."

## 76

But for to tell yow how Eolus was brought 526

In daunger of Pluto yet had I foryete,

Wherfore oñ thys mater ferther wyll I nougnt

Procede, tyll I therof haue knowleche yow lete. 529

Hyt fell on a day the wedyr was wete

And Eolus thought he wold on hys disport

Go to reioyse hys sprytes and comfort. 532

Apollo will confound him with his car.

Neptune will drown him.

Mars will pursue him with thunder and lightning,

Saturn will freeze him,

Mercury will deprive him of speech.

Athena suggests that the offender may be in the air, and without help of Eolus their anger is in vain; therefore she counsels that Neptune forgive his rancor.

But I have forgotten to tell you how Eolus came into Pluto's power.

In wet weather Eolus, to revive his spirits,

## 77

He thought he wold see what was in the ground,  
And in a krauers forthe he gan hym dresse.  
A drowthe had the erthe late before fownd  
That causyd hit to chyne & krany more and lesse. 533

Sodeynly by weet constreynyd by duresse  
Was the ground to close hys superfyciall face  
So strayte that to scape Eolus had no space. 539

## 78

Thys seyng Eolus he styllyd withyn aboode,  
Sekyng where he myght haue goon out feſ or nere.  
Anone he was aspyed and ooñ to Pluto roode  
And told hym how Eolus was in hys daungere. 543  
Then seyde he to Cerberus, "Fet me that pryonere  
Till I haue hym scene; let him nat go at large.  
As thow wylt awerſ of hym I yeue þe charge." 546

## 79

Thus was thys Eolus take prysoneſ.  
Then happyd hit so that the same day  
Pluto had prefyxyd for a gret mateſ  
Mynos to syt in his roob of ray. 550  
Wherfore Cerberus tooke the next way  
And led hym to the place where the court shalbe,  
Whedyr as I tolde yow Morpheus brought me. 553

## 80

So thedyr came Diana caryed in a carre,  
To make her compleynt as I told yow all.  
And so dyd Neptunus, that dothe bothe make & marre,  
Walewyng with hys wawes & tomblyng as a ball. 557  
Her matyrs they meuyd fall what may befall.  
Ther was the furſt syght that euer I theym sawe,  
And yef I neuer do eftē I rekke nat a strawe. 560

## 81

Bot now to my matyr to returne ageyñ  
And to begynne newe where I left—  
When all the goddes had done heſ besy peyñ  
The wey to contruyue how he shuld be reft  
Of hys lyfe, that Attropos had no cause eft  
To compleyñ, than Pheb[e] styrt vppon heſ fete  
And seyd, "I pray yow let me speke a worde yete: 567

entered the earth by a crevice, which was compressed by the water, shutting Eolus in.

540 He was reported to Pluto, who ordered Cerberus to take charge of the prisoner.

547 On that day the court of Minos sat, whither Eolus was brought as I have told you,

554 and there Diana and Neptune made their complaints as I said.

561 To return to my matter of Atropos.

Phebe wishes to speak.

82

“*Othea meneth well to sey on thys wyse,* 568

*She alone dares to entreat Neptune*  
*But all to entrete Neptunus, I hope, shall nat nede.*

*Me semeth I alone durst take that entyrpryse*

*Eſt I am beglyyd, or elles I shall spedē.* 571

*How say ye, Neptunus, shall I do thys dede?*

*Wyll ye youſt rancouſt sese at my request?”*

“*Madame,” quod he, “reule me as ye lyketh best.”* 574

83

“*Gramercy,” seyd she, “of your good wyll* 575

*to leave all old rancor.* *That hit pleseth yow to shew me that fauour,*

*Wherefore the goddes hygh pleasure to fulfyll,*

*Performe my desyre & leue all olde rancour,* 578

*For ouſt aldyrs wele & sauynge of our honour,*

*Ageyñ thys Eolus that ye long haue had.”*

“*Hyt ys dooñ,” quoth he, “forsoth then am I glad.”*

84

Seyde he, “Now then, Eolus, be thow to vs trew, 582

*Kepe well the eyñ, and owre gret rebell*

*May we then soone euer to vs subdew.”*

“*Yes and that,” quod Eolus, “shall ye here tell* 585

*No where in the eyre shall he reste nor dwell.*

*Yef he do theſof, put me in defaute,*

*With my bytter blastys so shall I hym asaute.”* 588

85

“*What,” seyd the god Pluto, “what ys hys name* 589

*That thus p̄ſsumeth ageyñ vs to rebell?”*

“*Vertew,” quod Atropos, “that haue he mykyll shame,*

*He ys never confoundyd, thus of hym here I tell.”* 592

“*A,” seyd thys Pluto, “in dede I know hym well,*

*He hath be euer myn vtter enemy.*

*Wherfore thys mateſt ageyñ hym take wyll I.* 595

86

“*For all the baytys that ye for hym haue leyde,* 596

*Without myñ helpe, be nat worth a peere.*

*For though ye all the contrary had seyde,*

*Yet wolde he breedē ryght nygh your althrys eere.* 599

*No maner of thyng can hym hurt nor dere*

*Saue oonly ooñ, a ſoñ of myñ bastard,*

*Whos name ys Vyce—he keþeth my vaward.* 602

87

"Wherfore, yow Cerberus, now I the dyscharge  
 Of Eolus, and wyl that thou hydry fette  
 My dere son Vyce, & sey that I hym charge  
 That he to me come without any lette,  
 Armyd at all poyntes, for a day ys sette,  
 That he with Vertew for all the goddes sake,  
 In our defense must on hym batayll take."

88

Forthe then went Cerberus with hys fyry cheyne  
 And brought thedyr Vyce, as he commaundyd was,  
 Ageyn noble Vertew that batayll to dereygne.  
 On a glydyng serpent rydying a gret pas,  
 Formyd lyke a dragon, scalyd harde as glas,  
 Whos mouth flamyd feere without fayll.  
 Wyngys had hit serpentynē and a long tayll.

89

Armyd was Vyce all in cure boyle,  
 Hard as any horñ, blakker feř then soot.  
 An vngoodly soort folowyd hym parde,  
 Of vnhappy capteyns of myschyef croppē & roote. 620  
 Pryde was the furst þat next hym roode, God woote,  
 On a roryng lyoň; next whom came Enuy,  
 Sytting on a wolfe—he had a scorñfull ey.

90

Wrethe bestrode a wylde bore, and next hem gan ryde. 621  
 In hys hand he bare a bldy nakyd swerde.  
 Next whoň came Couetyse, that goth so feř and wyde,  
 Rydying on a olyfaunt, as he had beň aferde. 627  
 Aftyrr whoň rood Glotony, with hys fat berde.  
 Sytting on a bere, with hys gret bely.  
 And next hym on a goot folowyd Lechery.

91

Slowthe was so sleepy he came all behynde  
 On a dull asse, a full wary pase.  
 These were the capteyns that Vyce cowde fynde  
 B[e]st to set hys felde and folow on the chase.  
 As for pety capteyns many mo the[r] wase;  
 As Sacrylege, Symony, & Dyssimulacion,  
 Manslaughter, Mordre, Theft & Extorcion,

603 and sends  
Cerberus to  
bring Vice to  
make battle  
with Virtue.

606

609

610 Cerberus leads  
forward Vice  
who comes  
riding on a  
winged serpent  
breathing fire.

613

616

617

Following him  
is a host of  
captains, Pride  
on a lion,  
Envy on a  
wolf,

623

Wrath on a  
wild-boar,

Covetousness  
on an elephant

627

Gluttony on a  
bear,

630

Lechery on a  
goat,

631

Sloth on  
an ass.

634

Inferior  
captains are:  
Sacrilege,  
Simony, etc.

637

|                                                    |                                       |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----|
| 92                                                 |                                       |     |
| Arrogance, Presumption, with Contumacy,            |                                       | 638 |
| Contempcion, Contempt, & Inobedience,              |                                       |     |
| Malyce, Frowardnes, Gret Ielacy,                   |                                       |     |
| Woodnesse, Hate, Stryfe, and Impacience,           |                                       | 641 |
| Vnkyndnesse, Oppression, with Wofull Neglygence,   |                                       |     |
| Murmour, Myschyef, Falshood & Detraccion,          |                                       |     |
| Vsury, Periury, Ly, and Adulacion,                 |                                       | 644 |
| 93                                                 |                                       |     |
| Wrong, Rauyne, Sturdy Vyolence,                    |                                       | 645 |
| False Iugement, with Obstynacy,                    |                                       |     |
| Dysseyte, Dronkenes, and Impronydence,             |                                       |     |
| Boldnes in Yll, with Foule Rybaudy,                |                                       | 648 |
| Fornycacion, Incest, and Auontry,                  |                                       |     |
| Vnshamefastnes, with Prodygalyte,                  |                                       |     |
| Blaspheme, Veynglory, & Wordly Vanyte,             |                                       | 651 |
| 94                                                 |                                       |     |
| Ignoraunce, Diffydence, with Iprocrysye,           |                                       | 652 |
| Seysme, Rancour, Debate, & Offense,                |                                       |     |
| Heresy, Errour, with Idolatry,                     |                                       |     |
| New-Fangylnes, & sotyll False Pretense,            |                                       | 655 |
| Inordinat Desyre of Worldly Excellense,            |                                       |     |
| Feynyd Pouert, with Apostasy,                      |                                       |     |
| Disclaundyr, Skorne, & Vnkynde Ielousy,            |                                       | 658 |
| 95                                                 |                                       |     |
| Hoordam, Bawdry, False Mayntenaunce,               |                                       | 659 |
| Treson, Abusion, & Pety Brybry;                    |                                       |     |
| Vsurpcion, with Horryble Vengeaunce,               |                                       |     |
| Came alther last of that company.                  |                                       | 662 |
| All these pety capteyns folowyd by & by,           |                                       |     |
| Shewyng theymsylf in the palyse wyde,              |                                       |     |
| And seyde they were redy that batayll to abyde.    |                                       | 665 |
| 96                                                 |                                       |     |
| There is a host<br>of comynnes<br>led by Idleness, | Idylnesse set the comons in aray      | 666 |
|                                                    | Without the paleyse on a fayre felde. |     |
| But there was an oost for to make a fray!          |                                       |     |
| I trow suche another neuer man behelde!            |                                       | 669 |
| Many was the wepyn among hem þat þey welde!        |                                       |     |
| What pepyll they were that came to that dysport    |                                       |     |
| I shall yow declare of many a sondry sort.         |                                       | 672 |

|                                                   |     |                             |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------|
| 97                                                |     |                             |
| Theſ were bosters, braggars, & brybores,          | 673 | boasters,<br>braggers, etc. |
| Praters, fasers, strechers, & wrythers,           |     |                             |
| Shamefull shakerles, soleyn shaueldores,          |     |                             |
| Oppressours of pepyll, and myghty crakers,        | 676 |                             |
| Meyntenours of querelles, horrable lyers,         |     |                             |
| Theues, traytours, with false herytykes,          |     |                             |
| Charmers, sorcerers, & many scismatykes,          | 679 |                             |
|                                                   | 98  |                             |
| Pryuy symonyakes, with false vsurers,             | 680 |                             |
| Multyplyers, coyn wasshers & clyppers,            |     |                             |
| Wrong vsurpers, with gret extorcioners,           |     |                             |
| Bakbyters, glosers, & fayre flaterers,            | 683 |                             |
| Malycious murmurers, with grete claterers,        |     |                             |
| Tregetours, tryphelers, feyners of tales,         |     |                             |
| Lastuyous lurdeyns, & pykers of males,            | 686 |                             |
|                                                   | 99  |                             |
| Rowners, uagaboundes, forgers of lesynges,        | 687 |                             |
| Robbers, reuers, rauenouse ryfeler,               |     |                             |
| Choppers of churches, fynders of tydylges,        |     |                             |
| Marrers of maters, & money makers,                | 690 |                             |
| Stalkers by nyght, with euesdroppers,             |     |                             |
| Fyghters, brawlers, brekers of lofedayes,         |     |                             |
| Getters, chyders, causers of frayes,              | 693 |                             |
|                                                   | 100 |                             |
| Tytyuyllys, tyrauntes, with turmentoures,         | 694 |                             |
| Cursyd apostates, relygyous dysymulers,           |     |                             |
| Closshers, carders, with couon hasardoures,       |     |                             |
| Tyburne coloppys, and pursekytters,               | 697 |                             |
| Pylary knyghtes, double tolling myllers,          |     |                             |
| Gay ioly tapsters, with hosteleres of the stewes, |     |                             |
| Hoores, and baudys—that many bale brewes,         | 700 |                             |
|                                                   | 101 |                             |
| Bolde blasphemers, with false ipocrytes,          | 701 |                             |
| Brothelles, brokers, abhomynable swerers,         |     |                             |
| Dryuylles, dastardes, dyspysers of ryghtes,       |     |                             |
| Homycydes, poyseners, & comon morderers,          | 704 |                             |
| Skoldes, caytyffys, comborouse clappers,          |     |                             |
| Idolatres, enchauntours, with false renegates,    |     |                             |
| Sotyll ambidextres, & sekers of debates,          | 707 |                             |

102

- Pseudo prophetes, false sodomytēs, 708  
 Quelners of chyldren, with fornycatours,  
 Wetewoldes that suffre syn in her syghtes.  
 Auouterers, & abhominable auauantours 711  
 Of syn, gret clappers, & makers of clamours;  
 Vnthyftys, & vnlustes came also to that game,  
 With luskes, & loselles that myght nat thryue for shame.

103

- These were the comons cane thedyr that day 715

Redy bowne in batayll Vertew to abyde.

Apollo, theym beholding, began for to say

- Apollo wishes to send a herald to warn Virtue.
- To the goddes & goddesses beyng there that tyde, 718  
 “Me seemeth conuenyent an herowde to ryde  
 To Vertew, & byd hym to batayll make hym bone,  
 Hymsylf to defende, for sowght he shalbe sone. 721

104

- “And let hym nat be sodenly take 722

All dyspurueyde or then he beware,

For then shuld our dyshonour awake

- Vice protests.
- Yef he were cowardly take in a snare.” 725  
 “Ee,” quod Vyce, “for that haue I no care.  
 I will auantage take where I may.”  
 That heryng, Morpheus pruyuly stale away, 728

105

- But Morpheus steals away to prepare Virtue for the battle.
- And went to warne Vertew of all thys afrai, 729  
 And bade hym awake & make hymself strong,  
 For he was lyke to endure that day

A gret mortall shoure, eñ hit were euesong, 732

With Vyce, wherfore he bade him nat long

Tary to sende aftyr more socouñ—

Yef he dede, hit shuld turne hym to dolouñ. 735

106

- And brefely the matyr to hym he declaryd, 736

Lyke as ye haue herde begynnyng & ende.

“Well,” quoth Vertu, “he shall nat be sparyd.

To the felde I wyll wende how hit wende. 739

But grainercy, Morpheus, myñ owne dere frende.

Of youñ trew hert & feythefull entent

That ye in thys mateñ to me ward haue ment.” 742

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                   |                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 107               |                                                                                                       |
| Thys doon, Morpheous departyd away<br>Fro Vertu to the palyce retornyng ageyn.<br>Nooñ hym aspyed, that I dañ well say.<br>In whyche tyme Vertew dyd hys besy peyñ<br>Pepyll to reyse hys quarell to menteyñ.<br>Ymaginacion was hys messyngere —<br>He went to warne pepyll bothe feñ & nere.                                                                 | 743<br>746<br>749 | Virtue makes ready, sending out his messenger, Imagination, to bid his people to come in to his help. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 108               |                                                                                                       |
| And bade hem come in all the haste they myght<br>For to streyngthe Vertu, for, without fayll,<br>He seyde he shuld haue, long or hit were nyght,<br>With Vyce to do a myghty strong batayll;<br>Of vngracious gastes he bryngeth a long tayll.<br>“ Wherfore hit behoueth to helpe at thys nede<br>And aftyr thys shall Vertu rewarde yowre mede.”             | 750<br>753<br>756 |                                                                                                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 109               |                                                                                                       |
| When Imaginacion had goon hys cyrcute<br>To Vertews frendys thus all aboute,<br>Withyn short tyme many men of myght<br>Gaderyd to Vertew in all that they mowte.<br>They hym comfortyd & bad hym put no dowte<br>Hys vtyr enemy Vyce to ouerthrow,<br>Though he with hym brought neufer so gret arow.                                                          | 757<br>760        | Virtue's host assembles.                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 110               |                                                                                                       |
| And when Vertew sy the substancce of hys oost,<br>He prayed all the comons to the felde hem hy,<br>With her pety capteynys both lest & moost,<br>And he with hys capteynys shuld folow redly.<br>For he seyde he knew well that Vyce was full ny.<br>And who myght furst of the felde recouer the centre<br>Wold kepe out that other he shuld nat esyly entre. | 764<br>767<br>770 | They are led towards the field.                                                                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 111               |                                                                                                       |
| Then sent he forthe Baptym to the felde before,<br>And prayed hym hertyly hit to ouerse,<br>That no maner trayne nor caltrop thefyn wore<br>To noy nor hurt hym nor hys meyne.<br>And wheñ he thedyr came he began to see<br>How Vyce hys purseuaunte, Cryme Oryginall,<br>Was entryd before and had sesyd vp all.                                             | 771<br>774<br>777 | Baptism is sent to spy out the ground.<br>Original Sin had entered before him                         |

## 112

- but fled at Baptism's approach. But as sore as heſof Baptym had a syght, 778  
 He fled fast awēy and left the felde alone.  
 And anone Babtyn̄ entred with hys myght,  
 Serchyg all about where thys Cryme had gone. 781  
 But the felde was clene defaute; fonde he none.  
 Then cam Vertew aftyr with hys gret oost,  
 And hys myghty capytayns, bothe leste & moost. 784

Virtue and his host follow.

Virtue leads, sitting in a car adorned with gold and stones, and crowned with laurel.

Four knights guide the car. Righteousness, Prudence, Strength and Temperance.

Following Virtue come seven captains each with an appropriate crest, Humility on a lamb,

Charity on a tiger,

Patience on a camel,

Liberality on a dromedary,

- But to enforme yow howe he thedȳr came. 785  
 And what maner capyteyns he to the felde brought—  
 Himsylfe, sekerly, was the furst man  
 Of all hys gret hoost that thedyrward sought, 788  
 Sytting in a chare that rychely was wrought,  
 With golde & peerles & gemmes precious,  
 Crownyd with laureſ as lord vyctoryous. 791

## 113

- Foure dowty knyghtys about the chare went 792  
 At eury corner on hit for to gyde,  
 And convey accordyng to Vertew hys entent.  
 At the furst corner was Ryghtwysnes that tyde, 795  
 Prudence at the second was set to abyde,  
 At the thryd Strengþt, the fourth kept Temperaunce.  
 These the chare gydyd to Vertew hys plesaunce. 798

## 114

- Next to the chare, seuen capteyns ther̄ roode, 799  
 Ychone aftyr other in ordre by and by.  
 Humlylyte was the furst; a lambe he bestroode.  
 With countenaunce demure he roode full soburly. 802  
 A fawcon gentyll stood on hys helme on hy.  
 And next aftyr hym came there Charyte  
 Rydyng on a tygre, as fyll to hys degré. 805

## 115

- Roody as a roose ay he kept hys chere. 806  
 On hys helme on hygh a pellycan he bare.  
 Next whom came Pacyence, þat nowhere hath no pere,  
 On a camell rydyng, as voyde of all care. 809  
 A fenyx on hys helme stood. So forthe gan he fare.  
 Who next hym folowyd but Lyberalyte.  
 Sytting on a dromedary, þat was bothe good & free.

## 116

117

On hys helme for hys crest he bare an ospray. 813  
 And next aftyr hym folowyd Abstynence,  
 Rydyng on an hert, hys trapure was gay,

Abstinence on  
a hart,

He semyd a lorde of ryght gret excellence. 816

A popyniay was hys crest: he was of gret dyffence.

Next hym folowyd Chastyte on an unycorn, 819  
 Arymd at all poyntes behynde and befor.

Chastity on a  
unicorn,

118

A turtyldoue he bare an hygh for hys crest. 820  
 Then came Good Besynesse, last of the seuyn,  
 Rydyng on a panter, a sondry colouryd best,

Good Business  
on a vari-  
coloured beast.

Gloriously beseene as he had come from heuyn. 823

A crane on hys hede stood, hys crest for to steuyn.

All these seuyn capteynes had standares of pryce, 826  
 Eche of hem acordyng aftyr hys deuyse.

Each captain  
bears a  
standard with  
a device.

119

Many pety capteyns aftyr these went, 827  
 As Trew Feythe, & Hoope, Mercy, Peese, & Pyte,  
 Ryght, Trowthe, Mekenesse, with Good Entent,

Many minor  
captains come  
next, True  
Faith, Hope,  
etc.

Goodness, Concorde, & Parfyte Vnyte, 830

Honest Trew Loue, with Symplycye,

Prayer, Fastynge, Preuy Almysdede,

Ioynyd with the Artycles of the Crede, 833

120

Confession, Contrpcion, and Satysfaccion, 834  
 With Sorow for Synne, & Gret Repentaunce,  
 Foryeuenes of Trespas, with Good Dysposicion,

Resystence of Wrong, Performyng of Penaunce, 837

Hooly Deuocion, with Good Contynuaunce,

Preesthood theym folowyd with the Sacramentes,

And Sadnesse also with the Commaundementes, 840

121

Sufferaunce in Trowble, with Innocency, 841

Clennesse, Continence, and Virginite,

Kyndnesse, Reuerence, with Curtesy,

Content & Plesyd with Pyteous Pouerte,

Entendyng Well, Mynstryng Equyte

Twene ryght & wrong, Hoole Indyfferency,

And Laboryng the Seruycce of God to Multyply, 847

|                                                  |  |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|--|-----|
| 122                                              |  |     |
| Refuse of Rychesse & Worldly Veynglory,          |  | 848 |
| Perfeccion, with Partye Contemplacion,           |  |     |
| Relygyoñ, Profession well kept in Memory,        |  |     |
| Verrey Drede of God, with Holy Predycacion,      |  | 851 |
| Celestiall Sapience, with Goostly Inspiracion;   |  |     |
| Grace was the guyde of all thys gret meyny,      |  |     |
| Whom folowyd Konnyng with hys genalogy—          |  | 854 |
| 123                                              |  |     |
| That ys to sey, Gramer, and Sophystry,           |  | 855 |
| Philosophy Naturall, Logyk, & Rethoryk,          |  |     |
| Arsmetry, Geometry with Astronomy,               |  |     |
| Canon & Cyuyle, melodyous Musyk,                 |  | 858 |
| Nobyll Theology, and Corporall Physyk,           |  |     |
| Moralizacion of Holy Scripture,                  |  |     |
| Profounde Poetry and Drawyng of Picture—         |  | 861 |
| 124                                              |  |     |
| These folowyd Konnyng & thedyr with hym came,    |  | 862 |
| With many ooñ moo offryng her seruyce            |  |     |
| To Vertew at that nede; but natwithstandyng than |  |     |
| Som he refusyd and seyde in nowyse               |  | 865 |
| They shuld with hym go, and, as I coude auyse,   |  |     |
| These were her names: fyrist, Nygromansy,        |  |     |
| Geomansy, Magyk, and Glotony,                    |  | 868 |
| 125                                              |  |     |
| Adryomancy, Ornomancy, with Pyromancy,           |  | 869 |
| Fysenamye also, and Pawmestry,                   |  |     |
| And all her sequelys, yef I shult nat ly.        |  |     |
| Yet Konnyng prayed Vertu he wold nat deny        |  | 872 |
| Theym for to know nor dysdeyne with hys ey       |  |     |
| Oñ hem to loke, wherto Vertew grauntyd,          |  |     |
| How[be]hit in hyswerres he wold nat þey hauntyd, |  | 875 |
| 126                                              |  |     |
| So had they Connynge lightly to depart           |  | 876 |
| From Vertew hys felde, and they seyng thys       |  |     |
| By comon assent hyryd theym a cart               |  |     |
| And made hem be caryed toward Vyce y-wys.        |  | 879 |
| Fro thensforth to serue hym they wold nat myns.  |  |     |
| Full lothe they were to he mastyrles;            |  |     |
| In stede of the bettyr the worse ther they ches. |  | 882 |

who then  
choose Vice as  
their master

127

|                                                                                                                                                                                |     |                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| But foorth to relese all the remenaunt<br>Of pety capteyns that <i>with Vertu</i> were,<br>Moderat Dyete, & Wysdom auenaunt,<br>Euyn Wyght & Mesure, Ware of Contagious Geere, | 883 | Other minor<br>captains with<br>Virtue are<br>Moderate<br>Diet, etc. |
| Lothe to Offende, and Louyng ay to Lere,<br>Worshyp, & Profyt, <i>with Myrthe</i> in Manere,<br>These pety capteyns <i>with Vertew</i> were in fere.                           | 889 |                                                                      |

128

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |     |                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Comones hem folowyd a gret multitude.<br>But in [comparyon] to that other syde<br>I trow ther was nat, brefely to conclude,<br>The x <sup>th</sup> man that batayll to abyde.<br>Yet neuorthelese, I shall nat fro yow hyde<br>What maner pepyll they were & of what secte,<br>As neere as my wyt therto wyll me dyrecte. | 890 | A great<br>multitude of<br>commons<br>follows, yet<br>numbering no<br>one-tenth of<br>Vice's host. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 893 |                                                                                                    |

129

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |     |                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------------------------------------|
| Theñ were notable and famous doctours,<br>Example yeuers of lyuyng gracyous,<br>Perpetuell prestes and dyscrete confessours,<br>Of Holy Scriptuñ declares fructuous,<br>Rebukers of synne & myscheses odyous,<br>Fysshers of fowles, & lovers of clennes,<br>Dyspysers of veyn & worldly ryches, | 897 | There are<br>famous<br>doctors etc. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 900 |                                     |

130

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |     |  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--|
| Pesyble prelates, iustciall gouernours,<br>Founders of churches, <i>with mercyfull</i> peeres,<br>Reformers of wrong of her progenitours<br>On peynfull poore pyteous compassioners,<br>Well menyng merchauntes, <i>with</i> trew artyfyceres,<br>Vyrwyns pure, and also innocentes,<br>Hooly matronys, <i>with</i> chaste contynentes, | 904 |  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--|

131

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |     |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--|
| Pylgryms, & palmers, <i>with</i> trew laborers,<br>Hooly heremites, goddes solycitous,<br>Monasteriall monkes, & well dysposyd freres,<br>Chanons, & nonnes, feythfull professoures,<br>Of worldly peple trew coniugatoures,<br>Louers of Cryst, confounders of yll,<br>And all that to godward yeue heñ good wyll, | 911 |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--|

132

- Mayntenours of ryght, verrey penytentes, 918  
 Distroyers of erroū, causes of Vnyte,  
 Trew actyf lyuers that set her ententes  
 The dedes to performe of mercy and pyte, 921  
 Contemplatyf peple that desyre to be  
 Solytary seuauntes vnto God alone,  
 Rather then to habounde in rychesse euynchone. 924

133

- These, with many mo then I reherse can, 925  
 Were come thedyr redy that batayll to abyde,  
 And take such part as fyll to Vertew than.  
 Vyce to ouercome they hopyd for all hys pryd, 928  
 All though that he had more pepyll on hys syde,  
 For the men that Vertu had were full sewre  
 To trust on at Nede & Konnyng in armure. 931

134

- The name of  
the field is  
Microcosm.**  
**In the midst  
is Conscience,  
the judge of  
the combat.**  
 Macrocosome was the name of the felde 932  
 Where thys gret batayle was set for to be.  
 In the myddes therof stood Conscience, & behelde  
 Whyche of hem shuld be brought to captuyyte. 935  
 Of that nobyll tryumphe iuge wold he be.  
 Synderesys sate hym withyn closyd as in a parke,  
 With hys tables in hys hand her dedys to marke. 938

135

- Five highways  
lead to the  
field.**  
**Thither Virtue  
hastens.**  
 To come in to the felde were hygh weyes fyne, 939  
 Free to bothe partyes, large, broode and wyde.  
 Vertu wold nat tary, bnt hyghyd hym thydyr blyue,  
 Lest he were by Vyce deceuyd at that tyde. 942  
 Long out of the felde lothe he was to abyde,  
 In auentur that he out of hyt were nat kept,  
 For then wolde he hane thought he had to long slept.

136

- Meanwhile  
Original  
Sin had  
reported to  
Vice.**  
 In thys mene tyme whyle Vertu thus preuydyd 946  
 For hym and hys pepyll the feld for to wynne,  
 He chargyd euery man by Grace to be guydyd.  
 And all that euer myght the felde to entre ynne. 949  
 In all that sesoñ went Orygynall Synne  
 To lete Vyce know how Baptyn, with hys oost,  
 Had entryd Macrocosme & serchyd euery coost. 952

## 137

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |            |                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| "A," seyde Vyce, " than I se well hit ys tyme<br>Baners to dysplay & standardys to auaunce.<br>Allmost to long haddyst thou taryed, Crymie,<br>To let vs haue knowlege of thys puruyaunce.<br>Yet I trow I shall lerne hem a new daunce.<br>Wherfore I commaunde yow all without delay<br>Toward the felde drawe, in all the haste ye may." | 953<br>956 | Vice com-<br>mands the<br>standards to<br>advance. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 959        |                                                    |

## 138

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Then seyde the god Pluto that all men myght here,<br>"Vyce, I the charge, as thou wylt eschew<br>Ouf heynous indignacion, thou draw nat arere<br>But put the forthe boldly to ouerthrow Vertew."<br>"In feythe," quoth Atropos, "and I shall astyr sew<br>For yef he escape youf handys thys day,<br>I tell yow my seruyce haue ye lost for ay." | 960<br>963<br>966 | Pluto charges<br>Vice to over-<br>throw Virtue.<br>If he fail,<br>Atropos<br>threatens to<br>withdraw his<br>service. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 959               |                                                                                                                       |

## 139

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |            |                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------|
| Forthe then rode Vyce with all hys hoole streyngth,<br>On hys steede serpentyn, as I tolde yow before.<br>The oost that hym folowyd was of a gret leyngth.<br>Among whom were penowns & guytornes many a score.<br>But as he went thederward--- I shall tell yow more<br>Of hys pety capteyns—he made many a knyght,<br>For they shuld nat fle but manly with hyñ fyght. | 967<br>973 | Vice and his<br>host advance. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------|

## 140

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |            |                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| He dubbyd Falshood, with Dyssymulacion,<br>Symony, Vsure, Wrong, and Rebawdy,<br>Malyce, Deceyte, Ly, with Extorcion,<br>Periury, Diffidence, and Apostasy,<br>With Boldnesse in Yll to bere hem company—<br>These xiiii knyghtes made Vyce that day;<br>To wynne theyf spores they seyde they wold asay. | 974<br>977 | As they<br>march Vice<br>dubs fourteen<br>knights,<br>Falsehood, etc |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 974        |                                                                      |

## 141

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |            |                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| In lyke wyse, Vertew dubbyd on hys syde<br>Of hys pety capteynes other fourtene,<br>Whyche made her avowe with hym to abyde.<br>Hef spores wold they wynne þat day, hit shuld be sene<br>These were her names, yef hit be as I wene :<br>Feythe, Hope and Mercy, Trouthe, & also Ryght,<br>With Resystence of Wrong, a full hardy wyght, | 981<br>987 | Virtue makes<br>a similar<br>number,<br>Faith, etc. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 981        |                                                     |

|                                                                                            |      |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------|
|                                                                                            | 142  |      |
| Confession. Contricion, with Satisfaccion,                                                 |      | 988  |
| Verrey Drede of God, Performyng of Penaunce,<br>Perfeccyon, Konnyng, and Good Dysposicion. |      |      |
| And all knyt to Vertu they were by allynance.                                              | 991  |      |
| Wherfore to hym they made assewraunce,                                                     |      |      |
| That felde to kepe as long as they myght                                                   |      |      |
| And in hys quarell ageyn Vyce to fygth.                                                    | 994  |      |
|                                                                                            | 143  |      |
| The lord of Macrocosme and rewler of that fee                                              |      | 995  |
| Was callyd Frewyll, chaungeſt of the chaunſe,                                              |      |      |
| To whom Vertew sent embassatours three,                                                    |      |      |
| Reson, Discretion, & Good Remembraunce,                                                    | 998  |      |
| And prayed hym be fauorable hys honour to enhaunce.                                        |      |      |
| For but he had hys favour at that poynt of nede                                            |      |      |
| He stooode in gret doute he coude nat lyghtly spedē.                                       |      |      |
|                                                                                            | 144  |      |
| In lyke wyſe, Vyce embassatours thre,                                                      |      | 1002 |
| 'For hys party, vnto Frewyll ſent,                                                         |      |      |
| Temptacion, Foly, & Sensualyte,                                                            |      |      |
| Praying hym of fauour that he wold aſſent                                                  | 1005 |      |
| To hym, as he wolde at hys commaundment                                                    |      |      |
| Hauē hym, eftſones, when he lyſt to call                                                   |      |      |
| Oñ hym for any thyng þat afyward myght fall.                                               | 1008 |      |
|                                                                                            | 145  |      |
| Anſwere yaue he nooñ to neyther party,                                                     |      | 1009 |
| Saue oonly he ſeyde the batayle wold he ſe.                                                |      |      |
| To weſe whyche of hem ſhuld hauē the victory,                                              |      |      |
| Hit hyng in hys balanſe the ambyguyte.                                                     | 1012 |      |
| He ſeyde he wold nat restrayne hys lyberte.                                                |      |      |
| When he come where ſorow ſhuld awake,                                                      |      |      |
| Then hit ſhuld be know what part he woll take.                                             | 1015 |      |
|                                                                                            | 146  |      |
| Whan Vertew and Vyce, be heſt embassatours,                                                |      | 1016 |
| Knew of thys anſwere, they stood in gret doute.                                            |      |      |
| Neuertheleſe, they ſeyde they wold endure tho ſhoures                                      |      |      |
| And make an ende shortly of that they went aboue.                                          |      |      |
| So forth came Vyce with all hys gret route.                                                |      |      |
| Eſt he came at the felde he ſent yet prynuly                                               |      |      |
| Sensualyte before, in maner of a ſpy,                                                      |      | 1022 |

Vice sends  
forth as a spy  
Sensuality.

147

Whyche sewe the felde with hys vnkynde seede  
 That causyd Vertu aftyr mykyll woo to feele.  
 For theſof grew nougħt but all oonly weede,

Whyche made the grounde as slepyr as an yele. 1026  
 He went ayene to Vyce and told hym every dele  
 How he had done, and bade hym com away [day.  
 For he had so purueyde that Vyce shuld haue the

148

Soo, as hit happyd, at the felde they mete, 1030  
 Freewyll, Vertew & Vyce, as trypartyte,  
 Safe Vertew a lytell before the felde had gete,  
 And elles hys auaantage forsothe had he full lyght  
 Nat for then encombryd so was neuer wyght  
 As Vertew and hys men were with the ranke wede  
 That in the felde grew of Sensualytees sede. 1036

who sows the  
field with  
wicked seed of  
weeds.

Virtue's men  
are  
encumbered  
by Sensu-  
ality's weeds.

149

But as sone as Vyce of Vertu had a syght, 1037  
 He gan swage gonneſ as he had be woode.  
 That heryng, Vertew commaundyd every wyght  
 To pauyſe hym vndyr the sygne of the roode, 1040  
 And bad hem nat drede but kepe stylle wheſ they stooде.  
 Hyt was but a shoure shuld soone confound, [ground.  
 Wherfore he commaundyd theym stand & kepe heſ

Virtue com-  
mands every  
man to pause  
under the sign  
of the cross.

150

And when Vyce came nereſ to the felde, 1044  
 He caſlyd ſoore for bowes and bade hem ſhote faste.  
 But Vertew and hys meyny bare of with the shelde  
 Of the blesſyd Trynyte ay tyll ſhot was paſte. 1047  
 And when ſhot was dooñ, Vyce came forthe at laſte,  
 Purpoſyng the felde with assayte to wyn. [theryn.  
 But Vertew kept hit long—he myght nat entyſ

They ward off  
the ſhots of  
Vice by the  
shield of the  
Holy Trinity.

Vice propoſes  
to make  
assault.

151

All that tyme Frewyll & hyñ bethought 1051  
 To whyche he myght leue & what part he wold take.  
 At laſt Sensualyte had hym ſo fer brought  
 That he ſeyde pleynly he Vertu wold forsake, 1054  
 And in Vyce hys quarell all hys power make.  
 “Y-wis,” quoth Reason, “that ys nat for the beſte.”  
 “No forſe,” ſeyde Frewyll, “I wyll do as my lyſte.”

Freewill  
inclines to the  
ſide of Vice.

152

Vertu was full heuy, when he sy Frewyll 1058

*Virtue is  
compelled to  
retreat.*

Take part with Vyce, but yet neuorthelesse  
He dyd that he myght the felde to kepe stylle.

Tyll Vyce, with Frewyll, so sore gan hym oppresse  
That he was constreynyd clerely by duresse

A lytyll tyne abak to make abew retret.

All thyng consyderyd hit was the best feett. 1064

153

Furst to remembre how Vyces part was 1065

Ten ayene ooñ strengor by lyklynes,

And than how Frewyll was with hym allas,

Whoo cowde deme Vertew but in heuynes; 1068

Moreouer to thynke how that slyper gres,

That of Sensalyte hys vnkynde seede grew

Vndyr foote in standyng encombryd Vertew. 1071

154

Yet natwithstandyng, Vertew hys men all 1072

Nobully theym bare and faught myghtyly.

Howe be hyt, the sleypy grasse made many of hem fall,

And from thense in maner depart sodeynly. 1075

That seyng, Vyce hys oost began to showt and cry

And seyde, "On in Pluto name! On! & all ys owre!

For thys day shall Vyce be made a conquerour!"

155

Thus Vertew was by myght of Vyce & Frewyll 1079

*Baptism,  
Faith, Hope  
and others  
hold their  
ground.*

Dreuen out of the felde—hit was the more pyte.

Howe be hit, yet Baptym kept hys ground stylle,

And with hym aboode Feythe, Hoope and Unyte, 1082

And Kunnyng also, with comons a gret meyne,

Confessyon, Contricion were redy at hef hande,

And Satysfaccion, Vyce to wythstande. 1085

156

But all the tyme whyle Vertew was away 1086

A myghty conflycte kept they with Vyce his rowte,

And yet neuorthelese for all that gret affray

Hoope stood vpright & Feythe wold neuor lowte; 1089

And euermore seyd Baptym, "Syres put no dowte

Vertu shall retorne & haue hys entente.

Thys felde shalbe ouſt & elles let me be shent."

157

And whyle these pety-capteynes susteynyd thus the feelde,  
*With Vertew hys rerewardre came Good Perseuerance,*  
 An hogy myghty hoost, & when he behelde

Virtue is  
reinforced by  
Perseverance  
who chides  
him for his  
retreat.

How Vertew hym withdrew he toke dysplesaunce, 1096

And when he to hym came he seyd, "Ye shall *your* chaunce

Take as hit falleth, wherfore returne ye must.

Yet oonys for youſ sake with Vyce shall I iust. 1099

158

"Allas that euer ye shuld leese thus *your* honouſ, 1100

And theſwith also, the hygh perpetuell crowne,

Whyche ys for yow kept in the celestiall touſ.

Wherfore be ye callyd Cristes Champyoſ? 1103

How ys hit that ye haue no compassyon

On Baptym, Feythe, & Hoope, Konnyng, & Vnyte,

That stant so harde be stadde & fyght as ye may see?

159

"All the tresouſ erthely vndyr the fyrmament, 1107

That euer was made of goddes creacion

To rewarde theym euynly, were nat equyualent

For her noble labouſ in hys afflyccion. 1110

Wherfore take vpon yow youſ iurysdycion.

Rescu yondyr knyghtes & recontynu fyght.

And elles adew youſ crowne for all *your* gret meryt."

160

*With these & suchē wordys, as I haue yow tolde, 1114*

By good Perseuerance vtryd in thys wyſe,

Virtue returns  
to the struggle

Vertu hym remembryd & gan to wex bolde

And seyd, "Yene trew knyghtes to rescu I auyse. 1117

Let vs no lengor tary from thys entrepryse."

Agayn to the felde so Vertew retornyd,

That causyd hem be meryþat long afore had mornyd.

161

"Avaunt baner," quoth he, "in the name of Ihesu." 1121 *in the name of*  
*Jesus.*

And with that hys pepyll set vp a gret showte

And cryed with a lowde voyce, "A Vertew! A Vertew!"

Then began Vyce hys hooste for to loke abowte, 1124

But I trowe Perseuerance was nat long withowte

He bathyd hys swerde in hys foes blood.

The boldyst of hem all nat oonys hym withstande.

162

They are  
victorious,

Constaunce hym folowyd &amp; brought hym hys spere. 1128

But when Perseuerance saw Vyce oñ hys stede,

No man cowde hym let tyll he came there.

For to byd hym ryde, I trow hit was no nede. 1131

All Vertew hys ost prayde for hys good spedē.

Agayñ Vyce he roode with hys gret shaft

And hym ouerthrew for all hys sotyll craft. 1134

163

Freewill comes  
to Conscience  
to repent and  
asks counsel;

That seyng, Frewyll came to Conscience,

1135

And gan hym to repent that he with hym had bee,

Praying hym of counsell for hys gret offence

That he agayñ Vertew had made hys armee. 1138

What was best to do. "To Humylyte," [sent

Quoth Conscience, "must þou go." So he hym thedyr

Disguysyd that he were nat knownen as he went. 1141

164

Humility to  
Confession;

And when he thedyr came, Humylyte hym took

1142

A token, &amp; bad hym go to Confessyon.

thence to  
Contrition,

And shew hym hys matef with a peteous look.

Whyche dooñ he hym sent to Contrycion,

1145

And fro thensforth to Satysfaccion.

Thus fro poost to pylour was he made to daunce.

Satisfaction,  
and lastly to  
Penance.

And at the last he went forth to Penannce. 1148

165

Vice is carried  
from the field,  
meeting  
Despair who  
fetches his  
reward.

But now for to tell yow — when Vyce was ouerthrow 1149

A gret parte of his oost about hym gan resorte.

But he was so febyll that he cowde no man know.

And when they sy þat they knew no conforte, 1152

But caryed hym away be a pruyu porte.

And as they hym caryed Dyspeyre with hym met:

With Vyce hys reward he came theym for to fet. 1155

166

Alpha and  
Omega  
despatch from  
the heavens  
two goodly  
ladies; one  
named  
Prescience to  
chastise Vice  
and his host;

Then came theſ downe goodly ladyes tweyne.

1156

From the hygh heuyn aboue the firmament,

And seyde the gret Alpha &amp; Oo, most souereyne,

For that nobyll tryumphe, had hem thedyr sent: 1159

Ooñ of hem to dryue Vyce to gret torment

With a fyry scourge that she bare in heſ hande.

And so he dede dyspeyre and all his hoole bande.

167

The name of thy lady was callyd Prescience. 1163 she pursues them through the gate of Hell.  
She neuer left Vyce, ne noon that wold hym follow,

Tyll they weſt commytyd by the diuine sentence

All to peyne perpetuell and infynyte sorow. 1166

Ryghtwysnes went to see that no man shuld hem borow.

Thus all entreyd sharplye were they, tyll Cerberus

Had hem beshut withyn hys gates tenebrus. 1169

168

And all the whyle that Prescience with heſt scorge smert

To rewarde Vyce gan hyr thus occupy,  
With all hys hoole bende, aftyſt heſt desert,

That other gloriouſ lady that came fro heuyn on hy, 1173

Hauyng in heſt hande the palme of vctory,

Came downe to Vertu and toke hym to that present,

Seyng thus that Alpha & Oo haue hym sent. 1176

169

And as ferre as I aryght cowde vndyrstand

1177 Her name is  
Predestina-  
tion; she  
grants them a  
heavenly  
habitation.

That ladyes name was Predestinacion.

Vertu & hys hoost she blesyd with her hand

And in heuen grauntyd hem habitacion,

1180

Where to eche of hem reservyud was a crowñ,

She seyde, in token that they enherytours

Of the glory were and gracious conquerours. 1183

170

Whyche dooñ, thoo ladyes ayene togedyr met

1184 Which done,  
the ladies  
depart  
suddenly.

And toward heuyn vp they gan to [fly],

Embrasyd in armes as they had be knet

Togedyr with a gyrdyll; but so sodenly 1187

As they were vanysshdyd saw I neuer thyng with ey.

And anon Vertew with all hys company

Virtue and his  
host thank  
God for the  
victory.

Knelyd dowñ and thankyd God of that vctory. 1190

171

Yet had I foryete when Vyce was ouerthrow

1191

To haue tolde yow how many of Vyce hys oost

Some of Vice's  
host seek  
Peace,  
beseeching  
mercy to plead  
to Virtue, or  
Faith, or  
Hope,

Gan to seek Peese, and darkyd downe full low,

And besought Mercy, what so euer hys cost, 1194

To be her mene to Vertew, elles they were but lost.

And som in lyke wyse to Feythe & Hoope sought

What to do, for peese they seyde they ne rought. 1197

172

- or Baptism. Som also to Baptym sewyd to be heſ mene; 1198  
 Som to ooñ, som to other, as they hem gete myght.  
 But all to Confession went to make hem clene. [lyght,  
 All must go to Confession. And as they came by Conscience he theym bad goo  
 Eſ than olde Attropus of hem had a syght.  
 For yef he so theym tooke lost they were for euer.  
 He seyde Vyce to forsake ys bettyr late then neuer.

173

- Some seek Circumcision who bids them go to Faith; he to Baptism and Virtue by process. Som eke for socouſ drew to Circumcysion, 1205  
 But by hym cowde they gete but small faouur,  
 For he in that company was had but in derysion.  
 Neuertheleſe to Feythe he bade hem go labour, 1208  
 Praying theym for olde acqueyntance theym socour.  
 "Well," quoth Feythe, "for hys sake, I shall do that I  
 But furſt for the best wey Baptym go ye to. [may do

174

- "For by hym sonneth shull ye recouer grace, 1212  
 Whyche shall to Vertu bryng yow by processe;  
 Wherfore in any wyſe looke ye make good face,  
 And let no man know of youſ heuynes." 1215  
 So they were by Baptym brought out of dystres—

- Virtue commands Freewill to come near Turnyd all to Vertew; & when thys was dooñ,  
 Vertu commaundyd Frewyll before hym com. 1218

175

- and charges him for taking Vice's part. To whom thus he seyde, "I haue gret meruayll 1219  
 Ye durſt be ſo bolde Vyces part to take.  
 Who bade yow do ſo & yauē yow that counſayll?

- Iuſtly vnto that ye shall me pruyu make." 1222  
 Then seyde Frewyll & ſwemfully ſpake,  
 Knelyng on hys kne with a chere benygne,  
 "I pray yow, syf, let pyte your eares to me enclyne

176

- upon Sensuality. "And I shall yow tell the verrey ſothe of all, 1226  
 Howe hit was, & who made me that wey drawe.  
 For ſothe, Sensualite, hys propre name they call."  
 "A," ſeyde Reason, "then I know well that felawe.  
 Wylde he ys & wanton, of me ſtant hym noon awe."  
 "Ys he ſoo?" quod Vertu, "well he ſhalbe taught—  
 As a pleyeſh ſhuld to drawe another draught." 1232

177

And with that came Sadnesse with hys sobre chere, 1233 Sadness brings  
 Bryngyng Sensualyte, beyng full of thought, Sensuality  
 And seyde that he had take hym pryonere. [sought.] prisoner to  
 Virtue.

“A welcome!” seyde Vertew, “now haue I that I

Blessyd be that good lord as thow wolde ys hit nought.”

“Why art thou so wantoun & wylde,” he seyde, “for shame!

Er thou go at large thou shalt be made more tame.

178

“But stande apart awhyle tyll I haue spoke a woordre 1240

With Frewyll a lytell, & then shalst thou know

What shalbe thy finaunce;” & then he seyde in boorde

Vnto Frewyll, “The bende of youſ bowe 1243 Virtue requires

Begynneth to slake, but suche as ye haue sowe

Must ye nedes reepe—theſ ys nooñ other way.

Natwithſtandynge that let see what ye can say. 1246

179

“What ys your hablyte me to recompense 1247

For the gret harme that ye to me haue do?”

recompense  
from Freewill.

“Forsothe,” seyd Frewyll in opyn audyense,

“But oonly Macrocosme more haue I nat lo. 1250

Freewill  
agrees to  
deliver  
Microcosm

Take that, yef hit plese yow, I wyll that hit be so.

Yef I may vndyrstand, ye be my good lorde.”

“In dede,” seyde Vertu, “to that wyll I acorde.” 1253

180

Then made Vertu Reson hys lyeftenaunt, 1254

which is given  
again to the  
charge of  
Reason and  
Freewill.

And yauē hym a gret charge Macrocosme to kepe.

That dooñ, Sensualyte yelde hym recreaunt,

And began for to angre byttrylly to wepe. 1257

For he demyd sewerly hys sorow shuld nat slepe.

Then made Vertu Frewyll bayll[e] vndyř Reson,

The felde for to occupy to hys behoue that seson. 1260

181

And then seyde Vertu to Sensualyte, 1261

Virtue orders  
Sensuality to  
forsake his  
fragility and  
be guided by  
Sadness.

“Thow shalt be rewardyd for thy besynesse.

Vndyr thys fourme all fraglyte

Shalt thou forsake, bothe more & lesse, 1264

And vnder the guydying shalt thou be of Sadnesse.

All though hit somewhat be ageyñ thy hert,

Thy iugement ys yeuyn—thow shalt hit nat astert.”

182

- With that Nature enters,  
protesting that Sensuality,  
her servant,  
should be given liberty.
- And euen with that came in Dame Nature, 1268  
Saying thus to Vertew, "Syr ye do me wrong  
By duresse & constreynt to put thys creature,  
Gentyll Sensualyte, that hath me servyd long. 1271  
Cleerly from hys liberte, & set hym among  
Theym that loue hym nat, to be her vnderlowte.  
As hit were a castaway or a shoo clowte. 1274

183

- Virtue grants Sensuality, freedom within Microcosm under the restraint of Sadness.
- "And, parde, ye know well a rewle haue I must 1275  
Withyn Macrocosme; forsoth, I sey nat nay."  
Quoth Vertu, "But Sensualyte shall nat performe your lust  
Lyke as he hath do before thys, yef I may. 1278  
Therfro hym restrayn Sadnesse shall assay.  
Howe be hit, ye shall haue your hoole lyberte  
Withyn Macrocosme, as ye haue had, fre." 1281

184

- This done, Virtue sees Morpheus standing by,
- And when Vertu had to Nature seyd thus, 1282  
A lyt yell tyne hys ey castyng hym besyde,  
He sy in a corner standyng, Morpheus,  
That hym before warnyd of the verryltye. 1285  
"A syres," seyd Vertu, "yet we must abyde.  
Here ys a frende of owre may nat be foryete.  
Aftyr hys desert we shall hym entrete." 1288

185

- and thanks him for his troth and labor.
- "Morpheus," seyd Vertu, "I thanke yow hertily 1289  
For your trew hert & your gret labouř,  
That ye lyst to come to me soo redyly,  
When ye undyrstood the commyng of that shouř. 1292  
I thanke God & yow of sauyng of myň honour.  
Wherfore thys pruyylege now to you I graunt,  
That withyn Macrocosme ye shall haue your haunt.

186

- He is given care of the five gates.
- "And of fyue posterneſ the keyes shall ye kepe, 1296  
Lettyng in and out at hem whom ye lyst,  
As long as in Macrocosme your fadry woll crepe.  
Blere whos ey ye woll hardyly with your myst, 1299  
And kepe your werkes close there as in a chyst.  
Safe I wold desyre yow spare Pollucion, [cioñ.]  
For nothyng may me plese that sowneth to corrup-

187

And when he had thus seyde, *þe* keyes he hym tooke, 1303

And toward hys castell with hys pepyll went,  
Byddyng Reasoñ take good heede & about looke,

Virtue and his  
people leave  
for the castle.

That Sensualyte by Nature were nat shent. 1306

"Kepe hym short," he seyde, "tyll hys lust be spent.

For bettyr were a chylde to be vnbore,

Then let hyt haue the wyll & for euer be lore." 1309

188

And when olde Attropos had seen & herde all thys, 1310

How Vertew had opteynyd, astonyed as he stood,

He seyd to hymself, "Somwhat theſ ys amys,

Atropos again  
complains to  
the gods.

I trow well my patent be nat all good," 1313

And ran to the palyse as he had be wood,

Seying to the goddes, "I see ye do but iape,

Aftyr a worthy whew haue ye made me gape. 1316

189

" Howe a deuyll way shuld I Vertu ouerthrow, 1317

When he dredyth nat all youſ hoole rowte!

How can ye make good youſ patent, wold I know.

Hyt ys to impossybyll to bryng that abowte; 1320

For stryke hym may I nat—that ys out of downte."

"A, good Attropos," seyd god Apollo,

" An answeſ conuenyent shalt thou hane herto. 1323 Apollo  
answers:

190

"The wordys of thy patent, daſ I well say,

1324 His patent is  
legal only  
within the  
jurisdiction  
of Nature.  
The destruc-  
tion of Virtue  
is therefore no  
for him.

Streche to no fertheſ but where dame Nature

Hath iurisdiccion; there to haue thy way,

And largesse to stryke as longeth to thy cure.

And as for Vertu he ys no creature

Vnder the preſdicament conteynyd of quantyte.

Wherfore hys deſtrucccion longeth nat to the." 1330

191

" A haa!" seyd Attropos, "then I se well

1331

That all ye goddes be but counterfete.

For oo God theſ ys that can every dell

Turne as hym lyst, bothe dry & whete,

1334

In to whos seruyce I shall assay to gete.

And yef I may ones to hys seruyce come

Atropos  
departs in  
wrath.

Youſ names shalbe put to oblyuyone."

1337

192

Thus went Attropos fro the paleyce wrooth.

1338

Meanwhile  
Residivacion,  
disguised like a  
pilgrim,  
makes his way to  
Micro-  
cosm,

But in the mene tyme, whyle that he there was,  
Glydyng by the palyce, Resydynacion gooth

Toward Macrocosme, with a peyntyd fase,  
Clad lyke a pylgryñ, walkyng a gret pase,

1341

In the forme as he had bene a man of Ynde.

He wende haue made Reson & Sadnesse boþe blynde.

193

With Sensualyte was he soone aqueyntyd.

1345

To whom he declaryd hys matyr pruyly.

Yet he was espyed for all hys face peyntyd.

Then Reson hym coþmaundyd pyke hym thens lyghtly.

"For hys ease," quoth Sadnes, "so counsell hym wyll I."

So was Sensualyte ay kept vndyr foote.

That to Resydynacion myght he doo no boote. 1351

194

Then went he to Nature & askyd hyf auyse,

1352

Hys entent to opteygne what was best to do.

She seyde: "Euer syth Vertew of Vyce wan the pryse,

Reson with Sadnes hath rewlyd the fylde so,

1355

That I and Sensualyte may lytyll for the do.

For I may no more but oonly kepe my cours.

And yet ys Sensualyte strengor kept & wours." 1358

195

Thus heryng, Residivacion fro thens he went ageyñ,

1359

Full of thought & sorow þat he myght nat spedre.

Then Reson & Sadnesse toke wede hokes tweyñ.

And all wylde wantones out of the fylde gan wede, 1362

With all the slyper grasse that grew of the sede

That Sensualyte before thefyn sew;

And for thens forthe kept hit clene for Vertew. 1365

196

Then began new gresse in the fylde to spryng,

1366

All vnlyke that other, of colouf fayre & bryght.

But then I aspyed a meruelous thyng,

For the grounde of the felde gan wex hoore & whyte.

I cowde nat conceyue how that be myght,

Tyll I was enformyd & taught hit to know,

But where Vertew occupyeth must nedys well grow.

No help is found in Nature.

Residivacion leaves full of sorrow.

Then Reason and Sadness clear the ground of the seeds of Sensuality.

New grass springs up in a marvelous manner.

197

Yet in the mene tyme, whyle the fylde thus grew, 1373 Virtue sends  
 And Reson with Sadnesse therof had gouernaunce,  
 Many a pruyu messyngier thedyr sent Vertew,

To know yef hit were guydyd to hys plesaunce; 1376

Now Prayer, eftre Fastynge, & oftyn tyme Penaunce,

And when he myght goo pruyuly, Almesdede,

And bade hym to hys powef̄ helpe whef̄ he sy nede.

198

Whyle that fylde thus rewlyd Resoñ with Sadnes. 1380

Mawgre Dame Nature for all her carnall myght,  
 Came thedyr Attropos, voyde of all gladnes,

Wrappyd in hys shete, & axyd yef any wyght 1383

Cowde wysshe hym the wey to the Lorde of Lyght,

Or ellys where men myght fynd Ryghtwysnesse.

“Forsythe,” seyde Reason, “I trow, as I gesse, 1386

Atropos draws  
near and asks  
Reason the  
way to the  
Lord of Light.

199

“At Vertu hys castell ye may soone hym fynde, 1387

Yef ye lyst þe labour thedyr to take,

And there shall ye know, yef ye be nat blynde,

The next wey to the Lorde of Lyght, I vndyrtake.” 1390

So thedyr went Attropos, petucion to make

To Ryghtwysnes, praying that he myght

Be take in to the seruyce of the Lord of Lyght. 1393

He is directed  
to Virtue's  
castle.

Atropos seeks  
from  
Righteousness  
to serve the  
Lord of Light.

200

“What,” seyde Ryghtwysnes, “thow olde dotyng foole,

Whome hast thow servyd syth the world began

But oonly hym? Where hast thow go to scoole?

Whether art thou double, or elles the same man 1397

That thou were furst?” “A syr,” seyde he than,

“I pray yow hertyly holde me excusyd.

I am olde & febilly; my wittes ar dysvsyd.” 1400

He is assured  
by Righteous-  
ness that the  
Lord is his  
master.

201

“Well,” seyde Ryghtwysnes, “for as moche as thow 1401

Knowest nat thy mastyr, thy name shall I chaunge.

Detha shalt thou be callyd, from hens forward now,

Among all the pepyll thou shalt be had straunge. 1404

But when thou begynnest to make thy chalaunge,

Dredde shalt thou be, whef̄ so thou become,

And to no creature shalt thou be welcome. 1407

His name is  
changed to  
DEATH, and  
to no creature  
shall he be  
welcome.

202

Those whom  
he formerly  
served shall be  
put to oblivion.

“And as for theym whom thou dedyst serue, 1408  
 For as moche as they presume on hem to take  
 That hygh name of God, they shall as they deserue  
 Therfore be rewardyd, I daſt vndyrtake, 1411  
 With peyñ perpetuell, among fendeſ blake,  
 And heſ names shall be put to oblynuoñ  
 Among men, but hit be in derysyon.” 1414

203

“A ha!” seyde Attropos, “now begyñ I wex gladde 1415  
 That I shall thus avengyd of hem be,  
 Syth they so long tyme haue made me so madde.”  
 “Yee,” quoth Ryghtwysnes, “here what I sey to the:  
 The Lord of Lyght sent the worde by me

Death is given  
a place in  
Microcosm.

That in Macrocosme sesyne shalt thou take:  
 Wherfore thy darte redy loke thou make.” 1421

204

Virtue then  
despatches  
Priesthood to  
the field with  
the sacraments.

And as sone as Vertu that vndyrstood, 1422  
 He seyde he was plesyd that hit shuld so be.  
 And euyñ forthewith he commaundyd Presthood  
 To make hym redy the felde for to se. 1425  
 Soo thedyr went Presthood with benygnyte,  
 Conveying thedyr the blesyd sacrament  
 Of Eukaryst. But furst were theder sent 1428

205

Previously had  
come thither  
Confession,  
etc.

Confession, Contricion, and Satisfaccion, 1429  
 Sorow for Synne, & gret Repentaunce,  
 Holy Deuocion, with Good Dysposicion—  
 All these thedyr came & also Penaunce, 1432  
 As her dewte was to make puruyaunce  
 Ageyñ the commyng of that blesyd Lorde.  
 Feythe, Hoope, & Charyte therto were acorde. 1435

206

The field is  
cleansed  
within and  
without, and  
the Lord of  
Light is  
received with  
fitness.

Reason with Sadnes dyd hys dylygence 1436  
 To clense the fylde withyn & without.  
 And when they sy the bodyly pr̄sence  
 Of that hoonly Eukaryst, lowly gan they lowte. 1439  
 So was that Lord receyud, out of dowte,  
 With all humble chere, debonayř & benygne.  
 Lykly to hys pleasure—hit was a gret sygne. 1442

207

- Then came to the fylde the mynystre fynall,      1443  
 Called Holy Vnction, with a crysmatory.  
 The v hygh weyes in especiall  
 Theſof he anoyntyd & made hit sanctuary.      1446  
 Whom folowyd Dethe, whych wold nat tary  
 Hys feruent poweſ there to put in vre,  
 As he was commaundyd, grauntyng Dame Nature.

Holy Unction  
anoints the five  
highways.Then enters  
Death his  
power to try.

208

- He toke hys darte, callyd hys mortall launce,      1450  
 And bent hys stroke toward the feldys herte.  
 That seyng, Presthoode bade Good Remembraunce  
 Toward the felde turne hym & aduerte.      1453  
 For except hym all vertues thense must sterte.  
 And euyn with that, Dethe there sesyne took ;  
 And then all the company clerely hit forsook.      1456

None can  
resist.

209

- And as sone as Dethe thus had sesyñ take,      1457  
 The colour of the felde was chaungyd sodenly,  
 The grasse thefyn, seere as though hit had be bake.      1460  
 And the fyue hygh weyes were muryd opon hy.  
 That fro thensward noon entre shuld therby.  
 The posternes also were without lette,  
 Bothe inward & outward, fyn fast shette.      1463

The grass  
becomes sete  
and the gates  
shut.

210

- Whyche dooñ, sodenly Dethe vanysshed away,      1464  
 And Vertu exaltyd was aboue the firmament,  
 Where he toke the crowne of glory that ys ay  
 Preparate by Alpha & Oo omnipoten[t].      1467  
 The swete Frute of Macrocosme þedyñ with hym went.  
 And on all thyſ mateſ as I stood musyng thus,  
 Agayn fro the felde to me came Morpheus,      1470

Suddenly  
Death vanishes  
and Virtue is  
exalted above  
the firmament.To me musing  
again comes  
Morpheus.

211

- Seying thus, "What chere ! howe lyketh the thyſ syght ?  
 Hast thouſene ynowgh, or wyll thouſe more ?"  
 "Nay syr," I seyde, " my trouthe I þow plyght,  
 Thys ys suffysyent, yef I knew wherfore      1474  
 Thys was to me shewyd, for theſof the lore  
 Coueyte I to haue, yef I gete myght."  
 "Folow me," quod he, "and haue thy delyght."      1477

I ask  
Morpheus the  
meaning of the  
sight.

212

I am brought  
to an arbor,  
with four walls  
So I hym folowyd, tyll he had me brought      1478  
To a fouresquare herber wallyd round about.

“Loo,” quoth Morpheus, “here mayst thou þat þow sought  
Fynde, yef thou wyll, I put the out of dout.”      1481  
A lytyll whyle we stood stylly there without,

and admitted  
by Wit.  
Tyll Wytte, chyef portere of that herber gate,  
Requyryd by stody, let vs in therē ate.      1484

213

But when I came in I mōrueyld gretly      1485  
Of that I behelde & herde there reporte.

It is the school  
of Doctrine.  
For furst, in a chayar, apparaylyd royally,  
There sate Dame Doctryne, her chyldren to exorte.  
And about her was many a sondry sorte:

Som wyllyng to lerne dyuvere scyence,  
And som for to have perfyte intellygence.      1491

214

Doctrine is  
crowned with  
three crowns—  
I cannot tell  
you all.  
Crownyd she was lyke an Empresse,      1492  
With iii crownes standyng on her hede on hy.  
All thyng about hyr an infynyte processe  
Were to declare, I tell yow certeynly.      1495  
Neuerthelese som in mynde therof haue I.

Whyche I shall to yow, as God wyll yeue me grace,  
As I sawe & herde, tell in short space.      1498

215

On one side  
sit Holy Text  
Glose and  
Moralization.  
Fast by Doctryne on that ooñ syde,      1499  
As I remembre, sate Holy Texte,  
That openyd hys mouthe to the pepyll wyde,  
But nat in comparysoñ to Glose that sate next.      1502  
Moralyzacion with a cloke context

Scripture  
serves as  
scribe.  
Sate; & Scrypture was scrybe to theym all.  
He sate ay wrytyng of that that shuld fall.      1505

216

These were tho that I there knew—  
By no maner wey of olde aqueyntaunce,  
But as I before saw theym with Vortew  
Company in felde & hanuyng dalyaunce.      1509  
And as I thus stood half in a traunce,

I look upon  
the walls  
Whyle they were occupyed in her besynesse,  
Abowte the walles myn ey gan I dresse.      1512

217

Where I behelde the meruelous story  
That euer I yet saw in any pycture,  
For on tho walles was made memory

1513 where is  
portrayed a  
marvelous  
story.

Singlery of euery creature

1510

That there had byñ, bothe forme and stature;

Whos names reherse I wyll, as I can

Bryng theym to mynde in ordre—euery man

1519

218

Furst, to begyñ, there was in portraiture

1520 First on one  
wall in  
portraiture is  
the story of  
Adam and  
Eve, Noah,

Adam; &amp; Eue holdyng an appyll round;

Noe in a shyp; &amp; Abraham hauyng sure

1523 etc. (Old  
Testament).

A flynt stone in hys hand; &amp; Isaac lay bound

On an hygh mount; Iacob slepyng sound,

And a long laddyñ stood hym besyde;

Ioseph in a cysterne was also there that tyde.

1526

219

Next whom stood Moyses, with hys tables two;

1527

Aaron &amp; Vrre, hys armes supportyng;

Ely in a brennyng chare was there also.

And Elyze stood, clad in an hermytes clothyng;

1530

Dauid with an harpe &amp; a stooñ slyng.

Isaye, Ieremy, and Ezechiel;

And closyd with lyons, holy Danyell;

1533

220

Abacuc, Mychee, with Malachy;

1534

And Ionas out of a whales body commyng;

Samuell in a temple; &amp; holy Zakary

Besyde an awter all blody standyng;

1537

Osee with Iudith stooede there conspyryng

The dethe of Oloferne; and Sal[ah]mon also,

A chylde with hys swerde dyuydying in two.

1540

221

Many moo prophetys certeynly there were,

1541

Whos names now come nat to my mynde.

Melchisedech also aspyed I there,

Bred &amp; wyne offryng as fyll to hys kynde.

1544

Ioachym and Anne stood all behynde,

Embrasyd in armes to the gyldyn gate.

And holy Iohñ Baptyst in a desert sate.

1547

222

And now commyth to my remembraunce 1548

I am avysyd I saw Sodechy,  
And Amos also, with sobre countenaunce,

Standyng with her faces toward Sophony. 1551

Neemy & Esdras bare hem company.

The holy man Ioob as an impotent,

Then folowyd in pycture with Thoby pacient. 1554

223

These, with many mo, on that oon syde 1555

Of that grene herber portrayed were.

“A,” seyde Morpheous, “a lytyll tyme abyde.

Turne thy face where thy bak was ere 1558

And beholde well what thou seest there.”

Than I me turnyd as he me bade,

With hert stedefast & countenaunce sade 1561

224

Where I saw Petyr, with hys keyes, stande; 1562

Poule with a swerde; Iames also

With a scalop: & Thomas holdyng in hys hande

A spere: & Phylyp aprochyd hym too. 1565

Iames, the lesse, next hem in pycture loo

Stood, with Bartylnew, whyche was all flayñ.

Symon & Thadee shewyd how they were slayñ. 1568

225

Mathy and Barnabe, drawyng lottys, stood. 1569

Next whom was Marke, a lyon hym by

Hys booke holdyng; & Mathew, in hys mood,

Resemblyd an Aungell with wynges gloryosly. 1572

Luke had a calfe to holde hys booke on hy.

And Iohñ with a cupp & palme in hys hande;

An Egle bare hys booke—thus saw I hem stande.

226

Gregory and Ierome, Austyn and Ambrose, 1576

With pylons on her hedys, stood lyke doctours.

Bernard with Anselme, and, as I suppose,

Thomas of Alquyñ, & Domynyk, confessours, 1579

Benet, & Hew, relygyous governours,

Martyne, & Iohñ, with bysshops tweyne,

Were there also, & Crysostom certeyne. 1582

Upon the  
opposite wall  
I see Peter,  
Paul, etc.  
(New Testa-  
ment and  
Church  
Fathers).

227

Behynde all these was worshipfull Beede. 1583

All behynde & next him stood Orygene,

Hydyng hys face, as he of hys deede

Had hem ashamyd—ye woot what I mene; 1586

For of errour was he nat all clene.

And on that syde stood there, last of all,

The nobyll prophecyssa, Sybille men hyf call. 1589

228

Let me remembre me, now I yow pray, 1590

My brayne ys so thynne, I deme in myn hert

Som of the felyshyp that I there say,

In all thyss whyle, have I ouerstert. 1593

A benedycyte nooñ ere cowde I aduert

To thynke on Andrew the Apostyll with hys crosse,

Whom to forgete were a gret losse. 1596

229

Many ooñ moo were peyntyd on that wall, 1597

Whos names now come nat to my remembraunce.

But these I markyd in especiall.

And moo cowde I tell, in contynuaunce 1600

Of tyme, but forthe to shewe yow the substaunce

Of thys matyr, in the myddes of that herbere,

Sate Doctryne, coloryd as any crystall clere. 1603

230

Crownyd as I tolde yow late here before, 1604

Whos apparayll was worthe tresouř infynyte—

All erthely rychesse count I no more

To that in comparyson valewyng then a myte. 1607

Ouer hef heede houyd a culuer fayre & whyte,

Oute of whos byll procedyd a gret leme

Downward to Doctryne, lyke a son beme. 1610

In the midst  
of the harbor  
sits Doctrine  
richly  
appareled.

231

The wordys of Doctryne yane gret redolence, 1611

In swetness of sauour, to her dysciples all.

Hyt ferre excedyd myrre and frankensence

Or any other tre spyce or ellys gall. 1614

And when she me aspyed, anon she gan me call. She bids me  
come near.

And commaundyd Morpheus that he shuld bryng me neere :

For she wolde me shew the effecte of my desyre. 1617

*Doctrine  
interprets the  
vision.*

*Imprisonment of Eolus  
signifies that  
unbridled  
wealth  
increaseth  
misrule.*

*Minos judges  
every man  
according to  
his wicked-  
ness.*

*The complaint  
of Diana and  
Neptune  
against Eolus  
signifies the  
folly of fools  
in attempting  
the impossible.*

- 232
- She seyde, "I know the cause of thy commyng      1618  
     Ys to vndyrstand, be myñ enformacion,  
     Sensybly, the mateñ of Morpheus hys shewyng  
     As he hath the ledde aboute in vysyon.  
     Wheñfore now I apply thy naturall reson  
     Vnto my wordys, &, ef thow hens wende,  
     Thow shalt hit know, begynnyng & ende.      1624
- 233
- " Furst, where Eolus to Pluto was brought,      1625  
     By hys owne neglygence takyñ pryonere  
     Witzyn the erthe: for he to ferre sought—  
     Sygnyfyed ys nomore be that matere      1628  
     But oonly to shew the howe hit dothe apere  
     That welthe, vnbrydelyd dayly at thyne ey,  
     Encreseth mysrewle & oft causyth foly.      1631
- 234
- " For lyke as Eolus, beyng at hys large,      1632  
     Stretytd hym sylf thorow his owne lewdenesse—  
     For he wold deele where he had no charge—  
     Ryght so wantons, by her wyldenesse,      1635  
     Oft sythe bryng hem sylf in dystresse,  
     Because they somtyme to largely deele.  
     What may worse be suffryd than ouer mykyll weele
- 235
- " By Mynos, the inge of hell desperate,      1639  
     May he vndyrstand Goddes ryghtwysnes,  
     That to euery wyght hys peyne deputate  
     Assygneth, acordyng to hys wykydnes.      1642  
     Wheñfore he ys callyd Iuge of crewnelnes.  
     And as for Diana & Neptunus compleynt,  
     Fyguryd may be fooles reson feynte.      1645
- 236
- " For lyke as they made heñ suggestion      1646  
     To haue me Eolus from course of hys kynde  
     Whyche was impossible to bryng to correccion,  
     For enuermore hys liberte haue wyll the wynde.  
     In lyke wyse, fooles otherwhyle be blynde,  
     Wenying to subdew, with her ooñ hande,  
     That ys ouer mekyll for all an hoole lande.      1649
- 1652

237

" But what foloweth therof that shall thow heere : 1653

When they were come to the banquet,  
The gret Apollo, with hys sad chere,

So fayre & curteysly gan theym entrete,  
That he made hef̄ beerdys on the new gete.

Loo, what wysdom̄ dothe to a foole —

Wherfore ar chyldren put to scoole. 1659

238

" Oft ys hit seene, with sobre contenaunce, 1660

That wyse men fooles ouercome ay,  
Turnyng as hem lyst and all her varyaunce,

Chaunge from ernest in to mery play. 1663

What were they bothe amendyd that day?

When they were dreuyn to her wyttes ende,

Were they nat fayne to graunt to be hys frende? 1666

239

" Ryght so fooles, when they haue dooñ 1667

All that they can, than be they fayne  
Yeuē vp her mater to oblyuoyōñ.

Without rewarde they haue no more brayne. 1670

And yet full oft hath hit be seyne,

When they hit hane foryete and set at nougħt,

That they full deere haue aftyrward hit bought. 1673

240

" And as for all tho that represent 1674

To be callyd goddys at that banquet,

Resemble false ydolys; but to thyss entent

Was Morpheous commaundyd thedyr the to fet, 1677

That thow shuldest know the maner & the get

Of the paynym lawe and of her beleue,

How false idolatry ledeth hem by the sleue. 1680

241

" For soone vppon the worldys creacion, 1681

When Adam & Eue had broke the precept —

Whyche clerkes call the Tyme of Deuyacion,

The worldly pepyll in paynym law slept, 1684

Tyll Moyses vndyr God the tables of stone kept.

In whyche tyme poetys feynyd many a fable

Todyscrete reson ryght acceptable. 1687

Apollo at his  
banquet  
causes their  
complaint to  
be forgotten.

So fools give  
up their matter  
to oblivion.

The Gods  
resemble false  
idols.

In the begin-  
ning people  
slept in pagan  
law.

The poets  
feigned many  
fables

242

- "And to the entent that they should sownde      1688  
 To the eares of hem the more plesauntly  
 which were given ground and names and called gods.  
 That they shuld reede or here, þey yauetheym a grounde  
 And addyd names vnto theym naturally:      1691  
 Of whom they speake & callyd hem goddes hy,  
 Som for the streyngthe & myght of heſ nature,  
 And som for heſ sotyll wytty conjecture.      1694

243

- "By nature thus as the sewyn planetts      1695  
 Haue heſ propre names by astronomers,  
 But goddys were they called by oold poetyts,  
 For her gret ferinyt of wyrkyng in her speres— 1698  
 Experyence preueth thys at all yeres.

And for as other that goddes callyd be

For sotyll wytte, that shall I teche the.      1701

244

- "How they by that hygh name of god came.      1702  
 In thys seyd tyme, the pepyll was so rude  
 That what maner creature, man or woman,  
 Cowde any nouelte contruyue & conclude      1705  
 For the comon wele, all the multitude  
 Of the comon peple a god shuld hym call,  
 Or a goddesse, aftyr hit was fall      1708

245

- Thus Ceres was thought to increase the product of corn and was therefore called Goddess of Corn.
- "Of the same thyng that was so new founde— 1709  
 As Ceres, for she the craft of tylthe founde,  
 Wherby more plentenosly corne dyd habounde,  
 The pepyll heſ callyd thorout euery londe      1712  
 Goddesse of Corne, wenyng in her honde  
 Had leyñ all poweſ of cornys habundaunce.  
 Thus wer the paynemes deceyuyd by ignoraunce.

246

- So Isis, Pan, etc.
- "In lyke maner, Isys was callyd the Goddesse      1716  
 Of Frute, for she fyrist made hit multyplie  
 By the meane of gryffyng: and so by processe  
 The name of Pan gan to deyfy.      1719  
 For he furst founde the mene shepe to guy.  
 Som tooke hit also by heſ condicioñ  
 As Pluto, Fortune, & suche other doñ.      1722

247

- "Thus all that poetys put vndyr couerture      1723  
 Of fable the rurall pepyll hit took  
 Propyrly as acte, refusyng the fygure;  
 Which errour som of hem neuer forsook.      1726  
 Oft a false myrrour deceyueth a manrys look,  
 As thow mayst dayly *proue* at thyne ey.  
 Thus were the paynmys deseuyd generally.      1729

248

- "That seyng, the dedely enemy of mankynde,      1730  
 By hys powē̄ permyssyue, entryd the ymages  
 Wityn the temples to make the pepyll blynde  
 In hē̄ idolatry, standyng on hygh stages;      1733  
 In so moche, whoo vsyd daungerous passages,  
 Any maner wey by watyr or be londe,  
 When hyd hys sacryfyce, hys awnswere redy founde.

249

- "Thus duryng the Tyme of Deuyacion.      1737  
 From Adam to Moyses, was idolatry  
 Thorow the world vsyd in comon opynyoñ.  
 These were the goddys that thow there sy.      1740  
 And as for the awayters that stood hem by  
 They polytyk philesophyrs & poetes were,  
 Whyche feynyd the fables that I speke of here.      1743

The gods at  
the banquet  
are the idols,  
the waiters are  
the poets and  
philosophers  
who feigned  
the fables.

250

- "Then sesyd the Tyme of Deuyacion,      1744  
 When Moyses receuyd that tables of stone,  
 Entryng the Tyme of Reuocacion.  
 On the Mount of Synay, stondyng alone,      1747  
 God yauē hym myght ayene all hys fone.  
 And then began the Olde Testament  
 Whyche to the pepyll by Moyses was sent.      1750

The three  
times.  
Deviation,  
Revocation,

251

- "And that tyme duryd to the incarnacion      1751  
 Of Cryst, & then began hit to sese.  
 For then came the Tyme of Reconsylacion  
 Of man to God—I tell the doutlese—  
 When the Soñ of Man put hym in prese,  
 Wyffully to suffre dethe for mankynde.  
 In holy scripture thys mayst thou fynde.      1757

Reconcilia-  
tion,

252

"Thys Reconsylacion was the Tyme of Grace, 1758  
 When foundyd was the churche vppoñ the feȳ stooñ,  
 And to holy Petyr the key delyueryd was  
 Of heuyn; then helle dyspoyled was anooñ. 1761  
 Thus was mankynde delyuerryd from hys fooñ.  
 And then began the New Testament  
 That the Crystyñ pepyll beleue in present. 1764

253

are portrayed upon the walls.  
 "Whyche iii tymes, a sondry deuydyd, 1765  
 Mayst thou here see, yef thou lyt beholde.  
 The furst behynde the yn pycture ys prouydyd.  
 The second of the lyft hande shewe prophetes olde. 1768  
 The iii<sup>de</sup> on the ryght hande here hit ys to the tolde.  
 Thus hast thou in vysyon the verrey fygure  
 Of these iii tymes here shewyd in purtrayture. 1771

254

"That ys to sey, furst, of Deuyacion 1772  
 From Adam to Moyses, recording Scripture;  
 Secund, fro Moyses to the incarnacion  
 Of Cryst kepeth Reuocacions cure. 1775  
 And as for the thryd, thou mayst be verrey sure,  
 Wyll dure from thens to the worldes ende.  
 But now the iii<sup>th</sup> must thou haue in mynde, 1778

255

The time of Pilgrimage or of War is figured upon the fourth wall.  
 "Whycheyscallyd propurly, the Tyme of Pylgremage 1779  
 Afyr som; & som name hit otherwyse  
 And call hyt the Tyme of Daungerous Passage;  
 And som Tyme of Werre, that fully hyt dyspysse. 1782  
 But what so hit be namyd, I woll the auyse—  
 Remembre hit well and prynce hit in thy mynde.  
 Wheſof the fygure mayst thou me behynde. 1785

256

This is signified by the battle between Vice and Virtue.  
 "And elles remembre thysylf in thyñ hert, 1786  
 Howe Vyce & Vertu dayly theym occupy,  
 In maner, ooñ of hem hym to peruert.  
 Another, to bryng hym to endeles glory. 1789  
 Thus they contynu fyght for the victory.  
 Hyt ys no nede heſof to tell the moore,  
 For in thys short vysyoñ thou hast seen hit before.

257

"And as for Attropos greuous compleynt  
 Vnto the goddes betokeneth nomore  
 But oonly to shewe the how frendely constreynyt  
 On a stedfast hert weyeth full soore.  
 Good wyll requyreth good wyll ayene therfore.  
 Dyscorde to Dethe hath ay byñ a frende,  
 For Dyscorde bryngeth many to her ende.

258

"Wherfore Dethe thought he wolde avengyd be  
 On hys frendes quarell yef that he myght,  
 For heſ gret vnykynnes, in so moche as she  
 Was among hem all had so in despyte      1800  
 And at that banquet made of so lyte;  
 Whyche causyd hym among hem to cast in a boοñ,  
 That found theym gnawyng ynough euɔychooñ. 1806

259

"Thus oft ys seeñ oo frende for a nother  
 Wyll say & do & somtyme matyrs feyne;  
 And also kynnysmen, a cosyñ, or a brotheř,  
 Woll for hys aly, eř he haue cause, compleyne.      1807  
 And where that he loueth do hys besy peyne,  
 Hys frendes matyř as hys owne to take,  
 Whyche oft sythe causeth mochyll sorow awake. 1813

260

"Be hyt ryght or wrong, he changeth nat a myte— 1814  
 As toward that poynt he taketh lytell heede.  
 So that he may haue hys froward appetyte  
 Performyd, he careth nat howe hys soule speede, 1817  
 Of God or deuyll have suche lytill dreede.  
 Howe be hyt, ooñ theř ys þat Lorde ys of all,  
 Whyche to euery wyght at last rewarde shall. 1820

261

"And as for the batayll betwene Vyce & Vertew holde,  
 So pleynly appereth to the inwardly,  
 To make exposicioñ theřof, new or olde,  
 Were but superfluyte—therfore refuse hit I.      1824  
 In man shall thow fynde that werre kept dayly,  
 Lyke as thou hast seeñ hit fowtyñ before thy face;  
 The pyctuř me behynde shewyth hit in lytill space.

1793

The complaint  
of Atropos  
signifies the  
constraint of  
friendship—  
Discord and  
Death.

1796

1799

1800

1803

1810

The alliance  
of friends often  
causes sorrow.

262

- Microcosm is  
the world of  
man.
- “ And as for Macrocosme, hit ys no more to say      1828  
     But the lesse worlde, to the comon entent  
     Whyche applyed ys to mañ both nyght and day—  
     So ys man the felde to whyche all were sent      1831  
     Oñ both partyes; & they that thedyr went  
     Sygnyfy nomore but aftyr the condicioñ  
     Of euerie mans opynyoñ.      1834

263

- Perseverance  
betokens the  
continuance of  
virtuous  
living.
- Whoso  
perseveres is  
rewarded with  
a crown.
- “ And as for the nobyll knyght Perseuerance,      1835  
     Whyche gate the felde when hit was almost goon,  
     Betokeneth nomore but the contynuaunce  
     Of vertuous lyuyng tyll deth hath ouergoon.      1838  
     Who so wyll doo, rewardyd ys anoñ,  
     As Vertu was with the crowne on hy,  
     Whyche ys nomore but euerlastyng glory.      1841

264

- Prescience and  
Predestination  
are the  
rewarders of  
vice and  
virtue.
- “ And as for Prescience and Predestinacion,      1842  
     That eche of hem rewardyd aftyr hys desert,  
     Is to vndyrstond nomore but dampnacion  
     To vycyous pepyll ys the verrey scourge smert      1845  
     Rewarde; for they fro Vertu wolde pernert.  
     And endelesse ioy ys to hem that be electe  
     Rewardyd & to all that folow the same secte.      1848

265

- The five keys  
are man's five  
wits.
- “ And as for the keyes of the posterns fyue,      1849  
     Whyche were to Morpheus rewardyd for hys labour,  
     Sygnyfy nat ellys but whyle man ys on lyue  
     Hys v inwarde wyttes shalbe euerie houre      1852  
     In hys slepe occupied, in hele and in langoure,  
     With fantasyes, tryfyls, illusions & dremes,  
     Whyche poetys call Morpheus stremes.      1855

266

- Residivacion  
signifies the  
return of man  
to sin.
- Reason and  
Sadness  
prevent such  
conclusion.
- “ And as for Resydiuacion ys nomore to sey      1856  
     But aftyr confessioñ turnyng ayene to syn,  
     Whyche to euerie man retorneth sauns deley  
     To vycyous lyuyng ageyñ hym to wyn.      1859  
     Whyle any man lyneth wyll hit neuer blyn,  
     That cursyd conclusion for to bryng abowte,  
     But Resoñ with Sadnes kepe hit styll owte.      1862

267

"Here hast thou prepurly the verrey sentence      1863

Herde now declaryd of thys vysyōñ.

The pycture also yeueth clere intellygence,

Theſof beholdyn with good discreſyōñ.

Loke well aboue & take conſyderacioñ,

As I haue declaryd, whether hit so be."

"A syr," quoth Morpheus, "what tolde I the!" 1869

268

"Hast thou nat now thyne hertes desyre?      1870

Loke on yoñ wall yonder before."

And all that tyme stood I in a wyre

Whyche way furſt myñ hert wold yeue more

1873

To looke; in a stody stood I therfore.

Neuertheleſe at laſt, as Morpheus me badde,

I lokyd forward with countenaunce ſadde,

1876

269

Where I behelde in portrayture

1877

All things as  
described are  
portrayed upon  
the wall.

The maner of the felde, euyñ as hit was

Shewyd me before; & euery creature

Oñ boode sydes beyng drawyn in ſmall ſpace

1880

So curiouſly, in ſo lytell a compace,

In all thys world was neu'r thyng wrought;

It were imposſible in erthe to be thought.

270

And when I had long beholde that pycture—      1884

"What," quoth Morpheous, "how long ſhalt thou looke,

Daryng as a dastard, oñ yoñ portrayture?

Come of for shame; thy wytte ſtant a crooke."

1887

I heryng that myñ hert to me tooke,

I look to the  
fourth wall,  
where are  
poets and  
philosophers.

Towarde the iiii<sup>th</sup> wall turningy my vysage,

Where I ſawe poetys & phylosophyrs ſage,

1890

271

Many ooñ mo then at the banquet

1891

Seruyd the goddes, as I ſeyde before.

Som were made ſtandynge, & ſom in chayeres ſet,

Som lookyng oñ bookes, as they had ſtodyed ſore,

Som drawyng almenakes, & in heſ handes bore

Aſtyrlabes, takyng the altytude of the ſonne—

Among whoñ Dyogenes ſate in a tonne.

1897

272

And as I was lokyng on that fourthe wall,  
1898  
Of Dyogenes beholdingyng the ymage,  
Sodeynly Doctryne began me to call,

And bad me turne toward hyr my vysage.  
1901  
And so then I dyd with humble corage. [thenthe  
“What thynkest thou,” she sayde, “hast thou nat  
Yet of these foure wallys —what they represent? 1904

273

*Doctrine explains the pictures of the Times.*  
“The pycture on the fyrist, that standeth at my bake, 1905  
Sheweth the the present Tyme of Pylgremage,  
Of whyche before I vnto the spake,  
Whyche ys the Tyme of Daungerus Passage. 1908  
The secund, dyrectly ageyñ my vysage,  
The Tyme expresseth of Deuyacion,  
Whyle paynynñ lawe had the domynacion. 1911

274

“The thryd wall, standyng on my lyft hande,  
1912  
The Tyme representeth of Reuocacion.  
And the fourth, standyng on my ryght hande,  
Determyneth the Tyme of Reconsilyacion. 1915  
Thys ys the effect of thy vysion.  
Wherfore the nediyth nomore theſon to muse—  
Hit were but veyñ thy wittes to dysvse. 1918

275

*Spend well the Time of Reconciliation.*  
“But duryng the Tyme of Reconsiliacion 1919  
Thy Tyme of Pylgremage looke well thow spende  
And then woll gracious Predestinacion  
Bryng the to glory at thy last ende.” 1922  
And euyn with that cam to my mynde  
My furst conclusion that I was abowte  
To haue drevyñ, eñ slepe made me to lowte— 1925

276

*This reminds me of my former doubt.*  
I pray  
Doctrine to  
reconcile  
Reason and  
Sensuality.  
That ys to sey, howe Sensualyte  
With Reason to acorde myght be brought abouete.  
Whyche causyd me to knele downe on my kne  
And beseke Doctryne determyneth that doute. 1929  
“Oo Lord God!” seyde Doctryne, “canſt thou nat with  
Me that conclusiōn bryng to an ende? [oute  
Ferre ys fro the wytte & ferther good mende.” 1932

277

- And euen with that Dethe gan appere,  
Shewyng hymself as though that he wolde  
Hys darte haue occupyed withyn that herbere.  
But ther̄ was nooñ for hym, yong nor olde,  
Sawe oonly I, Doctryne hym tolde,  
And when I herde hyr with hym comon thus,  
I me withdrew behynde Morpheus,

278

- Dredyng full soore lest he with hys dart,  
Thorow Doctrynes wordes, any entresse  
In me wolde haue had or claymed any part—  
Whyche shuld haue causyd me gret heuynesse.  
Withyn whyche tyme & short processe,  
Came theder Reason & Sensualyte.  
“A,” quoth Doctryne, “ryght welcome be ye.

279

- “Hyt ys nat long syth we of yow spake.  
Ye must, er ye go, determyne a dowte.”  
And euyñ with that she the mateř brake  
To theym and tolde hit euery where abowte.  
I wold haue be thens, yef I had mowte.  
For feere I lookyd as blak as a coole.  
I wold haue cropyn in a mouse hoole.

280

- “What!” quoth Doctryne, “where ys he now,  
That meuyd thys mater straunge & diffuse?  
He ys a coward—I make myñ avow.  
He hydeth hys hede, hys mocion to refuse.”  
“Blame hym nat,” quoth Reson, “alwey that to vse  
When he seeth Dethe so neere at hys hande.  
Yet ys hys part hym to wythstande.

281

- “Or, at the leste way, ellys fro hym flee  
As long as he may—who dothe otherwyse  
As an ydiote.” Quoth Sensualyte,  
‘Who dredyth nat Dethe wyse men hym dyspyse.’  
“What!” seyde Doctryne, “how long hathе thys gyse  
Beholdyn & vsyd thus atwyx yow tweyne?  
Yee were nat wont to acorde certeyne.”

1933 Death enters;

1936

1939

1940 of whom I am  
afraid.

1943

Reason and  
Sensuality  
come thither.

1947

I am more  
afraid.

1950

1953

1954

1955

Reason  
excuses my  
fear, since  
Death is to be  
shunned.1961 With which  
sentiment  
Sensuality  
accords.

1967

282

- “Yes,” quoth Reson, “in thys poynt, alway                    1968  
     To euery man haue we yeuen ouȝ counsayll  
 Dethe for to flee as long as they may.  
     All though we otherwyse haue done ouȝ trauayll 1971  
     Yche otherȝ to represse, yet wȝthoute fayll  
     In that poynt oonly dycordyd we neuer.  
     Thus condescendyd theryn̄ be we for euer.”        1974

283

- “A! A!” seyde Doctryne, “then ys the conclusion 1975  
     Clerely determinynd of the gret dowte  
 That here was meuyd”— & halfe in derysion  
     She me then callyd & bade me loke owte.                1978  
     “Come forthe,” she seyde, “and feere nat thys rowte.”  
     And euen wȝth that, Reson and Sensualyte  
     And Dethe fro thens were vanysshyd all thre. 1981

284

- Then lokyd I forthe as Doctryne me badde.                1982  
     When Dethe was goon̄, me thought I was bolde  
 To shew my sylf, but yet was I sadde.  
     Me thought my dowte was nat as I wolde,                1985  
     Clerely and opynly declaryd & tolde.  
     Hit sownyd to me as a parable,  
     Derke as a myste, or a feynyd fable.                    1988

285

- And Doctryne my conceyte gan espy.                    1989  
     “Wherfore,” seyde she, “standyst thou so stylly?  
 Wherbyn̄ ys thy thought? Art thou in stody  
     Of thy question? Hast thou nat thy fyll                1992  
     To the declaryd? Tell me thy wyll.  
     Herdest thou nat Reson & Sensualyte  
     Declare thy dowte here before the?”                    1995

286

- “Forsothe,” quoth I, “I herde what they seyde.        1996  
     But neuerthelese my wyt ys so thynne,  
 And also of Dethe I was so afrayed,  
     That hit ys oute where hyt went ynn̄.                1999  
     And so that matyr can I nat wynne  
     Without your helpe & benyuolence  
     Theȝof to expresse the verray sentence.”                2002

This solves  
my question.Death,  
Reason, and  
Sensuality  
vanish.The matter is  
not wholly  
clear.

287

- “Well,” quoth Doctryne “then yeue attendaunce  
 Vnto my wordes, & thou shalt here  
 Opynly declaryd the concordaunce  
 Atwene Sensualyte & Reson in fere.  
 Yef thou take hede, hit clerely dothe apere  
 How they were knette in ooñ opynyon.  
 Bothe agayñ Dethe helde contradyccyon.

288

- “Whyche concordaunce nomore sygnyfyeth  
 To pleyne vndyrstandyng, but in euery mane  
 Bothe Sensualyte & Reson applyeth  
 Rather Dethe to fle then with hit to be tane.  
 Loo in that poynt accorde they holly thane.  
 And in all other they clerely dyscorde.  
 Thus ys trewly set thy doutfull monacorde.”

289

- I, heryng that, knelyd on my kne  
 An thankyd her lowly for hyr dyscyplyne,  
 That she vouchesafe, of hyr benygnyte,  
 Of tho gret dowtys me to enlunyne.  
 Well was she worthy to be called Doctryne,  
 Yef hit had be nomore but for the solucion  
 Of my demaunde and of thys straunge vysyon.

290

- And as I with myne heede began for to bow,  
 As me well ought to do hyr reuerence,  
 She thens departyd — I cannat tell how.  
 But wþyn a moment goon was she thens.  
 Then seyde Morpheus, “Let vs go hens.  
 What shuld we heere tary lengere?  
 Hast thou nat herde a generall answere

291

- To all thy matyrs that thou lyst to meue?  
 My tyme draweth nere that I must rest.”  
 And euyn therewith he tooke me by the sleue  
 And seyde, “Goo we hens, for that hold I best.  
 As good ys ynowgh as a gret feste.  
 Thow hast seeñ ynowgh; hold the content.”  
 And euyn with that forthe with hym I went,

2003    Doctrine interprets my vision.

2006

2009

2013    In one point Reason and Sensuality accord—in the fear of Death.

2016

2017

2020

2023

2024    Doctrine suddenly vanishes.

2027

2030

2031

2034    Morpheus leads me back

|                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                       | 292                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
| to my bed<br>and secretly<br>steals away.                             | Tyll he hadde me brought agene to my bedde,<br>Where he me founde, and then prynuly<br>He stale awey. I cowde nat vndyrstande<br>Where he became, but sodenly<br>As he came, he went—I tell yow veryly,                                                                               | 2038 |
| Then I awake                                                          | Whyche dooñ, fro slepe I gan to awake.<br>My body all in swet began for to shake                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 2041 |
|                                                                       | 2044                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |
| in great dread.                                                       | For drede of the syght that I had seene,<br>Wenyng to me all had be trew<br>Actuelly dooñ where I had beene.<br>The batayll holde twene Vyce & Vertew.<br>But when I sy hit, hit was but a whew.<br>A dreme, a fantasy, & a thyng of nought.<br>To study thefon I had nomore thought. | 2045 |
|                                                                       | 2048                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |
| It is all a<br>dream.                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 2051 |
| Lest fault be<br>found in me,<br>I write down<br>what I have<br>seen. | Tyll at the last I gan me bethynke<br>For what cause shewyd was thys vysyon.<br>I knew nat; wherfore I toke pen & ynke<br>And paper to make therof mencion<br>In wrytyng, takyng consideracion<br>That no defaute were founde in me,<br>Wheñon accusyd I ought for to be              | 2052 |
|                                                                       | 2055                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |
|                                                                       | 2058                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |
|                                                                       | 295                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|                                                                       | For slowthe, that I had left hit vntolde—<br>Nowthyr by mowthe nor in remembraunce<br>Put hit in wrytyng; wheñ thorow manyfolde<br>Weyes of accusacion myght turne me to greuaunce.                                                                                                   | 2059 |
|                                                                       | 2062                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |
|                                                                       | All thys I saw as I lay in a traunce,<br>But whedyr hit was with myne ey bodily<br>Or nat in certayñ, God knoweth and nat I.                                                                                                                                                          | 2065 |
|                                                                       | 296                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|                                                                       | That to dyscerne I purpose nat to deele.<br>So large by my wyll hit longeth nat to me.<br>Were hit dreme or vysioñ, for your own̄ wele,<br>All that shall hit rede, here rad, or se,                                                                                                  | 2066 |
|                                                                       | 2069                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |
|                                                                       | Take theñ of the best & let the worst be—<br>Try out the corne clene from the chaff<br>And then may ye say ye have a sure staff                                                                                                                                                       | 2072 |

Take from my  
writing the  
best and leave  
the chaff.

297

- To stande by at nede, yef ye woll hit holde      2073  
 And walke by the way of Vertu hys loore.  
 But alwey beware, be ye yong or olde,  
 That youſt frewyll ay to Vertu moore      2076 Walk the way  
 Apply than to Vyce, the eysyeſt may be boore  
 The burdyn of the fylde, that ye dayly fyght

Agayn youſt iii enemyes, for all her gret myght.      2079 Fight against  
 your enemies,

298

- That ys to sey, the Deuyll & the Flesshe      2080 the Devil,  
 And also the Worlde, with hys glosyng chere,  
 Whyche oñ yow looketh euer newe & fresshe—  
 But he ys nat as he doth apere.      2083  
 Lok ye kepe yow ay out of hys daungere.  
 And so the vycotry shall ye obteyne,  
 Vyce fro yow exylyd & Vertew in yow reyne.      2086 Let Virtue in  
 you reign.

299

- And then shall ye haue the triumphall guerdouñ      2087 Thine be the  
 That God reserveth to euery creature  
 Aboue in hys celestiall mansiouñ,  
 Joy and blys infinite, eternally to endure.      2090  
 Wheſof we say we wold fayn be sure.  
 But the wey thedyſward to holde be we lothe,  
 That oft sythe causeth the good Lorde to be wrothe.

300

- And by oure desert oure habitacion chaungeth      2094  
 Fro ioy to peyne & woo perpetually,  
 From hys gloryous syght thus he vs estrangeth,  
 For our vycyous lyuyng, thorough owre owne foly.      2097  
 Wherfore let vs pray to that Lord of Glory,  
 Whyle we in erthe bee, that he wyll yeue vs grace,      Let us pray  
 So vs here to guyde that we may hane a place,      2100 the Lord of  
 Glory to give us grace.

301

- Accordyng to oure regeneracion,      2101  
 With heuynly spyrtes, hys name to magnyfy      Let us magnify  
 Whyche downe descendyd for ouſt redempcion,  
 Offryng hym ſylf on the crosse to hys fadyr on hy.      2104  
 Now benygne Ihesu, that borñ was of Mary,  
 All that to thys vysion hane yovyn her audyence.      Jesus, grant  
 Graunt eternall ioy aftyr thy last sentence.      2107 eternal joy to  
 the readers of  
 my book.

Amen.

## NOTES.

In the notes and introduction references are made to the following editions:

Lydgate's Minor Poems, including *Pur le Rey, Chorle and Bird*, and *Testament*, Halliwell, Percy Soc.

*Æsop*, Sauerstein (*Anglia*, IX).

*Temple of Glas*, Schick, E. E. T. Soc.

*Dance of Macabre*, *M.S.* Bodl. 686.

*Falls of Princes*, Pynson's print, Brit. Mus.

*Story of Thebes*, Speght's Chaucer, Lond. 1598.

*Secrees of Old Philisoffres*, Steele, E. E. T. Soc.

*Chaucer's Works*, Skeat, one vol. (Macmillan); also the Aldine.

*Langland's Piers the Plowman*, Skeat, E. E. T. Soc. Text B.

*Gower's Confessio Amantis*, Pauli, 3 vols.

*Mapes's Latin Works*, Wright, Camden Soc.

*Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyt*, Morris.

*Rolle of Hampole's Pricke of Conscience*, Morris.

*Ancren Riwle*, Morton.

*Wyclif's Works*, Arnold, 3 vols.

*Chronicle of Robert of Brunne* (*Anglia*, IX).

*Hawes's Pastime of Pleasure*, Percy Soc.

*Douglas's Works*, Small, 4 vols.

*Dunbar's Works*, Small, Scot. Text. Soc.

*Lyndesay's Works*, E. E. T. Soc.

*King James's Quair*, Skeat, Scot. T. Soc.

*Skelton's Works*, Dyce.

*Barclay's Ship of Fools*, Jamieson, 2 vols.

*Spenser's Works*, Morris, one vol. (Macmillan).

Other works, as specially indicated.

P. 1, l. 1. The time is near the middle of July. Lydgate has a similar opening in *A Poem against Self-Love* (M. P., p. 156):

“Toward the eende of frosty Januarie,  
Whan watur Phabus had his purpose take  
For a sesoun to sojourne in Aquarwe  
And Capricorn hadde uttirly forsake,  
Toward Aurora a-morwe as I gan wake. . . .”

Cf. the imitation by Hawes in the *Pastime of Pleasure*:

“When Phabus entred was in Gemini,  
Shynnyng above in his fayre golden spere,  
And horned Dyane then but one degree  
In the Crabbe had entred fayre and cleare;  
When that Aurora did well appeare  
In the depured ayre and cruddy firmament,  
Forth then I walked without impediment.”

The prototype is found in Mapes' poem “*Apocalypsis Goliae Episcopi*,” which contains also a reference to Pythagoras as the teacher to the Greeks of the seven Arts of the Schools. P. is there represented as having the signs of

the Arts on different portions of the body. Astrology, the highest form of knowledge, is marked prominently on the forehead. (Works, Camden Soc., ed., Wright.)

Hawes, in his *Past. of Pleas.*, p. 105, affirms that

"Thus God hym selfe is chief astronomyer."

**I. 2. gan.** This usage is maintained to the present. See Browning's *Easter Day*:

"Which gan suspire."

Used as auxiliary in I. 624.

**I. 3. Pictagoras speere.** The spelling "Pictagoras" occurs in the *Rom. of the Rose* (l. 5649) for the French "Pythagoras" (l. 5007). Chaucer has "Pictagoras" in the *Bk. of the Duch.* (l. 1167). Lydgate uses "Pictagoras" in *Min. P.* (p. 84, 87). The philosopher was known in England for his science of number. Cf. Lydgate's *Pur le Roy* (*M. P.*, p. 11):

"And Arsmetryk, be castyng of nombrary,  
Chees Pyktegoras for hēr parte."

Chaucer notes he "the firste finder was of the art (of music)"—*Bk. of the Duch.*, l. 1168.

The sphere is according to his mathematics the most perfect figure; it is the circle of the heavens. It was used to symbolize the Soul, the Microcosm, implying final harmony in "the Diapason closing full in man." Other figures were the triangle, the least perfect figure, symbolizing the body, and the quadrade, in the perfect proportion of 7 to 9, embracing all the powers of man. Cf. Spenser, *Fairy Querna*, Bk. II., c. 9, st. 22:

"The frame thereof seemd partly circulare,  
And part triangulare, O worke divine, . . . .  
And twixt them both a quadrate was the base,  
Proportiond equally by seven and nine;  
Nine was the circle set in heavens place;  
All which compacted made a goodly Diapase."

The ninth or cosmological sphere represented harmony, to which end, according to the philosophy, opposing elements were united. The Pythagorean sphere thus taught the poet the lesson he was seeking of concord.

**P. 2.** I. 9. *obstacl*, *habytacle*, *tryacle*. Other sets of rimes occur thus: *obstacle*, *spectacle*, *myracle*, *tryacle* (*Test.*, *Min. P.*, p. 236); *triacle*, *obstacle* (*Aesop*, *Fab.*, 4, ll. 148-50); *obstacle*, *myracle* (*Seer.*, ll. 120-22); *obstacle*, *oracle* (*Seer.*, ll. 624-26); *obstacle*, *miracle* (Chau. *Fr. Tale*, ll. 571-72); *miracle*, *triacle* (Chau. *Man of L. Tale*, ll. 379-81), etc.

I. 11. *habytacle*. Cf. Chau. *Ho. of Fame*, l. 1104:

"Weren sondry habitacles;"

Lydgate, *Min. P.*, p. 140:

"Whan th'olygoost made his habitacle;"

Hawes, *Past. of Pleas.*, p. 218:

"First God made heaven is prope habitacle," etc.

I. 12. *rownē*. Commonly in M. E. a distinction is made between *rownē* (to mutter) and *whisper*. Here=to commune.

I. 12. *tryacle*. Theriaca was the name given to a medicine compounded by a Roman physician Andromachus. For the history of the word see Morley, *Lib. of Engl. Lit.*, p. 21. Lydgate uses the term frequently; thus "Gostly tryacle", *Min. P.*, p. 98;

"Ther is no venome so parious in sharynes"

"Os whan it hathe of treacle a lyknes—" *Ch. and Bd.*, *Min. P.*, p. 186;

"Agyyne verray poyson ordeyned is triacle—" *Aesop*, *Fab.*, 4, l. 148;

"The name of Ihesu! sweetest of namys alle!"

"Geyn goostly venyms, holsomest tryacle—" *Test.*, *M. P.*, p. 236.

It is found in Chaucer, *Man of L. Tale*, l. 381:

"Crist, which that is to every harm triacle;"

and in *Piers Pl. Pas.*, 2, l. 146:

"Love is triacle of hevene."

Cf. Beau. and Fl., *Sea Ioyage* (Dyce, viii., p. 360):

"This may be treacle"

Sent to preserve me after a long fast."

The figurative use is very common.

l. 14. *Morpheus*. These dreamers almost invariably have guides. Boethius was directed by Philosophy, Dante by Virgil and Beatrice, Mapes by Pythagoras, King James by Good Hope, etc.; Morpheus as a shewer of fancies appears again in Higgin's *Mirror for Magistrates* (1576).

l. 18. *Mynos the iustysse*. Minos is first seen as Judge of the lower world in the *Odyssey*. Virgil followed Homer (*Aen.* 6, 431). Dante selected him as the typical judge in the *Inferno* (c. v.) in the second circle of which he abides and examines sins at the entrance.

l. 19. *solisgyse*. A general term. Cf. Hawes, *Past. of Pleas*, p. 32:

"Agaynst your fables wyll often solisgyse."

l. 21. *he must nedys go, etc.* The proverb occurs again in Skelton's *Gard. of Laur.*, l. 1434:

"Nedes must he rin that the dëvyl dryvith."

Greene uses it in *The Carde of Fancie*, ed. Grosart, p. 79, l. 4. Hazlitt in his *Proverbs* quotes an instance from *Triall of Treasure* (1567).

l. 34. *abidyng*. Used as a noun. Cf. *Esof*, Fab. 6, ll. 122-23:

"Yonder on that other side

Is myn abidyng."

Cf. guydnyg, l. 59.

l. 35. *Fantasy*. For the dwelling place of Morpheus see Chaucer's *Ho. of Fame*, Invoc.; *Bk. of the Duch.*, l. 153; Spenser, *Faery Queene*, Bk. I., c. 1, st. 30; Ariosto, *Orl. Fur.*, xiv., 92; Ovid, *Met.*, xi., 502. Gower describes the Cave of Sleep in *Confes. Am.*, II., pp. 102-3. Cf. "The House of Sleep," Cook, Mod. L. Notes, V., p. 10.

l. 37. *Cerberus*. The constable is a somewhat new role for Cerberus, whom Dante describes as a demon, a cruel and monstrous beast tearing and flaying and rending the spirits in Hell (*Infer.*, c. 6). As opposing Christ he appears in Lydgate's *Test.*, p. 236:

"Ihesu

Took out of helle soulys many a payre,

Mawgre Cerberus and al his cruelte."

He is called "chief porter of hell" in *Story of Thebes*, fol. 375. He was known to Bunyan as the Porter of Hell, serving also as one of the captains of Diabolus in the Holy War.

P. 3, l. 45. *strayte correccyon*. Cf. *Esof*, Fab., 4, l. 36:

"Straitly requyeng the iuge in this matiere;"

*Secrees*, ll. 762-3:

"Twen moche and lyte a mene to devise

Of tomekyl and streight coveitise;"

idem, l. 799:

"But he that is streyght in his kepyng."

l. 52. *in fera*=in company, together; O. E. *ge-féra*, a companion; M. E. *in fera* is a corruption of *yféra* which is restored in Spenser; and cf. Tennyson, *Conf. of Sens. Mind*:

"And in the flocks

The lamb rejoiceth in the year,

And raceth frely with his fere."

Chaucer has *yfere* in *Leg. of G. W.*, Pr., l. 263. Douglas uses *yfeir*.

l. 58. *chases*. Technically a chase is a private open hunting ground to which game resorts, differing from a "forest" in being open and private. Cf. Cheviot Chase or Chevy Chase.

l. 59. *cure*. Cf. Chaucer, *Hh. of Fame*, l. 464:  
"For Jupiter took of him cure."

l. 65. *comfort*. This word has a variety of meanings in M. E. Cf. Glossary.

l. 66. *roote and rynde*=wholly. Cf. l. 620, "croppe and roote." See Gower, *Conf. Aman*, I, p. 152:  
"Of flour and gras and roote and rinde."

l. 69. *maner*. For this use of maner see Chaucer, *Compleynte unto Pite*,

l. 24:  
"What maner man dar now holde up his heed?"  
*The Compl. of Mars*, l. 116:

"For she ne fond ne saw no maner wight."

See l. 5:  
"Musyng on a maner,"

l. 1735:  
"Any maner wey."

Cf. *Secrees*, l. 7:  
"To euyer maner wyght;"

idem, l. 741:  
"In no maner wyse."

l. 71. *syngler*. Cf. *Secrees*, l. 332:  
"For my moost vertuous and singuler counfort;"

idem, l. 1128:  
"To his noblesse and his singuler glory."

P. 4, l. 87. *kervell*. Cf. Kersey's Dict.: "Caravel or carvel, a kind of light round ship with a square Poop, rigg'd and fitted out like a Galley, holding about six score or seven score Tun." Columbus's ships were called "caravels." The vessel which Douglas saw in his vision (*Pal. of H.*) that was driven upon the sands was called the "Carwell of the State of Grace."

l. 88. *karyk*=cark, a large ship. Cf. Chaucer, *Som. Tale*, Pr., l. 24:  
"Brodder than of a carrik is the sayl" (the first use of word in Engl.). The "Universal Ship" that carried Barclay's fools is called a "carake"; and see *Ship of Fools*, II., p. 220:

"That all the shypes ne galeys vnto Spayne

Nor myghty carakes cannot them well contayne."

Cf. Beaumont and Fletcher, *Two Nob. Kins*:

"Then would I make  
A carrack of a cockle-shell."

l. 90. *who*. Note the use of who as relative. See l. 769.

l. 96. *daungere*. The M. L. *damnum* signified (1) a fine (2) the territory over which a lord ruled (3) the enclosed field of a proprietor (4) power to exact a penalty. In M. E. danger meant in general simply power or jurisdiction. Cf. *Aesop*, Fab. 5, l. 39:

"Thow were in my daungere."

See l. 543=territory or jurisdiction. It had also the modern meaning of danger as in the *Secrees*, l. 1103:

"Avoydyng al daunger."

See Wedgwood for the history of the word.

l. 97. *seethe*=satisfaction. Cf. *Digby Myst.*, N. Shak. Soc., p. 143, l. 121-3:  
"Wysdom that was god and man right,  
Made a full seth to the fader of hevyn  
By the dredfull deth to hym was dight."

- l. 101. *a loft*. Cf. *Temp. of Glas*, l. 41:  
                   “Now lowe and eft aloft;”
- idem, l. 645:     “I am set on loft;”
- Secrees*, l. 1244:     “Planety a-lofte.”
- l. 104. *foom*. This was often used of sweat as in Chaucer, *Ch. Yeo. Tale*, Pr., l. 12:  
                   “He was of fome (from sweat) al flekked as a pye.”
- l. 105. *betyn*. Cf. Lydgate, Min. P., p. 168:  
                   “Abydithe so longe til he be betyn doune.”
- P. 5, l. 116. *in especiall*.** A very common phrase in Lydgate. Cf. *Secrees*, ll. 536, 653, 1041, 1088, etc. I find a modern use of the phrase in Poe's *Phil. of Composition*:  
                   “It is this latter, in especial, etc.”
- l. 110. *cost*. Frequently used for neighboring country. Cf. *Piers Plow.*, Pas. ii., l. 85 (B):  
                   “The counte of coueteise and alle the costes aboute.”
- l. 126. *pyry*. Cf. Ir. *piorra*, a blast of wind. This is an earlier instance than that given in the Cent. Dict. Cf. Hawes, *Post. of Pleas*, p. 53:  
                   “In the stormy pery.”
- lappyd* = wrapped. Cf. Rob. of B. *Chron.*, l. 1149:  
                   “And bylapped hem on ylk a side;”
- Ode by Rich. Barnfield, l. 24:  
                   “All thy friends are lapt in lead;”
- Breton, *Arb. of Am. Delights* (1593):  
                   “Sing lullaby and lap it warm.”
- Browning uses it in *Strafford*, Act V, 2, l. 332:  
                   “lapped round with horror.”
- l. 127. *boystous*. This is the form of the word in Chaucer. Cf. *Mann. Tale*, l. 107:  
                   “I am a boistous man;”
- Morte Arthure*, Th. MS., l. 615:  
                   “Thos bustous churilles.”
- The *Story of Thebes* has “boistouslie” (fol. 370). Boisterous is found by Shakespeare's time.
- l. 140. *avysment*. Cf. Chaucer, *Parl. of F.*, ll. 554–55:  
                   “The water-foules han her bedes leyd  
                       Togeder, and of short avysement;”
- Troy. and Cris.*, II, l. 343:  
                   “Avysement is good bifore the nede.”
- P. 6, l. 154. *egall*** = equal. Cf. Lydgate, *Secrees*, l. 386:  
                   “Ye wer of lyff egal with hoonly seyntes;”
- Min. P. p. 210:  
                   “So egally ther doomys to avaunce.”
- Paregall occurs often in Skelton. Unperegall is found in Marston, *Dutch Courtezan*, IV, v.
- l. 157. *prima facie*. The date of the first instance of the Engl. usage of this phrase given in the Stanford Dict. (Latin in Engl.) is 1646. Cf. Chaucer in *Troil. and Cris.*, III, l. 918:  
                   “This accident so pitous was to here  
                       And eek so lyk a sooth, at pryme face.”
- l. 162. *onward*. Skeat says this did not appear before Sir Th. More! (Dict.).

l. 163. *messynger*. Formed from the Fr. *message*. When was the *n* introduced?

Gower has messagere in *Conf. Am.*, III, p. 249. Lydgate in *Story of Thebes* uses messengers (fol. 372) and messagere (fol. 380, 386). Chaucer has both messenger and messanger (see Glossary of Ch.).

l. 167. *banket*. In the fourteenth century the cloth or cushion covering a bank or bench on which dessert was served was called a "banker"; a feast came to be called a "banket" (*Mem. of Lond.*, ed. Riley, I, p. 179 and p. 44).

**P. 7**, l. 191. *ryght glad*. Right used in this manner is generally considered to be an Americanism (Southern) but this usage, like the American "I guess," is good Middle English.

l. 192. *all and some* = the long and short of it (Skeat). This is one of the most common phrases in L. M. E. Cf. Chaucer, *Fr. Tale*, l. 878:

"This al and som, there is no more to seyn;"

*Parl. of F.*, l. 650:

"This al and som, that I wolde speke and seye," etc., etc.

*Rom. of the Rose*, l. 740:

"So faire they weren alle and some;"

Gower, *Conf. Am.*, II, p. 379:

"There ben the lordes all and some;"

Lydgate, *Temp. of Glas*, l. 1037:

"This is al and some, the fine of my request," etc.

Cf. Spenser, *Faerie Queen*, III, xii, 30.

I remember to have seen the phrase used by Swinburne. Browning has in *Ring and Book*:

"So do I see, pronounce on all and some."

l. 202. *by and by* = one after the other, separately. See l. 302. Chaucer has in *Rv. Tale*, l. 223:

"Right in the same chambre, by and by;"

*Rom. of the Rose*, l. 4581:

"These were his wordis by and by."

l. 217. *grogryng*. The most common word of its class in Lydgate's vocabulary, commonly spelled gruechyng.

Min. P. p. 67:

"Nat gruechyng, but mery like thi degré;"

idem, p. 83:

"List thank God voyde al gruechyng;"

*Aesop*, Fab. 2, l. 101:

"Nor grueche in pouerte."

Often in *Temp. of Glas* (see ll. 187, 424, 853, 879, 1266) and *Secrees* (ll. 113, 775, 778, 780).

*Piers the Plowman*, Pr., l. 153:

"And gif we grueche of his gamen."

In Chaucer's *Pers. Tale* grueching is declared a species of Envy.

Cf. Mary Wilkin's *Pembroke*, Ch. 12:

"I don't begrutch it to her."

**P. 8**, l. 232. *dyscrese*. From L.L. *discrescere*. Gower has discreseth (*Conf. Am.*, II, p. 189).

l. 233. *I dar vndyrtake*. A common formula; Chaucer has it in the *Mt. Tale*, l. 355. Cf. Prol. l. 288:

"And he nas nat right fat, I undertake."

l. 243. Neptune's *mastresse*. Cf. Chaucer, *Fr. Tale*, ll. 319-20:

"Though Neptunus have deite in the see,  
Yet emperesse aboven him is she (Lucina)."

l. 249. *Othea*. I have retained the spelling in the text, though I am confident that *Athena* is the right reading.

l. 252. *marchall*. It was the office of the marshal of a feast to set the guests in order of rank.

**P. 9**, l. 253. The Gods. The delineation of the pagan deities in the manner of pictorial art is perhaps the best thing done in the poem. For models of these images he had, perchance, the work of Albrecht Philosopher, entitled *De Deorum Imaginibus*, containing sketches of the heathen gods (Van Staveren's *Auctores Mytholog. Lat.*); also, of course, the work of Fulgentius (Introd. p. xl); or for that he would not need to go much farther than Gower's *Conf. Amor.* Bk. IV. In l. 294 he refers to "olde poetys" for his authority. There is a minor assembly of gods in Lydgate's *Zisop* where judgment is given concerning the marriage of Phebus. See also The Assembly in Dunbar's *Golden Targe*.

l. 256. *presse*. The MS. preef is changed to presse because of the riming word messe.

l. 258. *be spreynyt*. Cf. Chaucer, *Compl.*, l. 10:

"To Pite ran I, al bespreynt with teres;"

"dew-besprent" occurs in *Comus*, l. 541. Browne notes that besprent is Spenserian.

l. 260. *Mars myghty god and strong*. A translation of the more common epithet of Mars, "armypotent"—borrowed from Virgil (*En.* IX, 717). Cf. Boccaccio, *Teseide*, VII. 32.

l. 262. *yron* and the other metals. The association of the different metals with the planets is attributed to Geber (see Thomson, *Hist. of Chem.*, I, 117). The temple of Mars built by Theseus (*Knight's Tal*) was all of steel. In Chaucer's *Ho. of Fame* (ll. 1446-8) it is said that "Yren Martes metal is:"

"And the leed, withouten faile,  
Is, lo, the metal of Saturne."

The Chanoun Yeman explains the seven "bodies" (*Ch. Y. Tale*, ll. 273-6):

"Sol gold is, and Luna silver we threpe;  
Mars yren, Mercurie quicksilver we clepe;  
Saturnus leed, and Iubiter is tin,  
And Venus coper, by my fader kin."

Gower gives the complete list in *Conf. Am.*, Bk. 4, II, p. 84:

"The gold is titled to the sonne;  
The mone of silver hath his part;  
And iron, that stond upon Mart;  
The leed after Satorne groweth;  
And Iupiter the brass bestoweth;  
The copper set is to Venus,  
And to his part Mercurius  
Hath the quick-silver."

Note the description by Hawes of the monster of the seven metals whose head and face were gold, the neck silver, the breast and heart steel, the fore-legs brass, the back copper, the hindlegs tin, the tail lead (*Past. of Pleas.*, p. 102).

l. 266. *poudryd*. A term in heraldry for sprinkled.

l. 267. *take the mantell and the ryng*. This saying refers to the assumption by a widow of a ring and a "widow's mantel," probably of black silk, as evidence of a vow of perpetual widowhood. See Lydgate, *Dance of Mac.*: "Chastely receyved the mantel and the ryng;"

Min. P., p. 34:

"She wol perhappous maken hir ayewe  
That she wol take the mantle and the ryng."

**P. 9**, l. 269. *demenyng*. Cf. the *Secrees*, l. 1082:

"Sad of his cheer, in his demenyng stable;"

*Temp. of Glas*, l. 750:

"Hir sad demening."

l. 270. Words like *sad*, *wise* and *end* are dissyllabic in Chaucer, *sad* | *de*, *wys* | *e*, *end* | *e*.

l. 272. *philosophres*; *cofres*. A stock rime from Chaucer; cf. *Cant. Tales* Pr., l. 297-8:

"And albe that he was a philosophre  
Yet hadde he but litel gold in cofre;"

see also *Man of Law's Tale*, ll. 25-6; *Fris. Tale*, ll. 843-4; *Ch. Y. Tale*, ll. 283-4; *Dr. of Ph. Tale*, Pr. I. 5-6; *Leg. of G. W.*, Pr. II. 380-1; Gower uses it in *Conf. Am.*, II., p. 107 and III., p. 163; Lydgate employs it again in *Aesop*, ll. 1-3, in *Secrees*, ll. 34-5, 435-7, 540-2. Chaucer rhymes *philosophre* again with *profre* (*Sec. N. Tale*, ll. 489-90; *Ch. Y. Tale*, ll. 111-12).

l. 275. *rychely besene*. Cf. Skelton, *Garl. of Laur.*, ll. 482-3:

"Wherein was set of Fame the noble Quene,  
All other transcendynge, most rychely besene;"

*Temp. of Glas*, l. 1167:

"Ai fresshi and welbesein."

l. 280. *morne*: *Saturne*. Cf. *Temp. of Glas*, ll. 480-1, *mourne*: *turne*, 858-9, *mourne*: *refourme*.

**P. 10**, l. 296. *fresshe=gorgeous, gay*. Cf. Skelton, *Garl. of Lau.*, l. 39:

"Garnysshed fresshe after my fantasy."

l. 306. *purpur*. The M. E. spelling. Cf. Chaucer, *Leg. of G. W.*, I., l. 75:

"With al her purple sayle."

i. 308. *perles oryent*. Cf. Chaucer, *Leg. of G. W.*, Pt., l. 221:

"For of oo perle, fyne, oriental;"

see the *Flow. and Leaf*, line 148:

"As greate perles, round and oriente;"

Skelton, *Garl. of Lau.*, l. 485:

"Fret all with orient perlys of garnete;"

Lydgate's *Aesop*, l. 26:

"Perlis white, cliere, and oriental;"

John Day's Works (ed. Bullen, p. 37): "And as jewels, so the stones be orient, artfully cut and orderlie sett."

l. 314. *sulphure*. Cf. Chaucer, *Ho. of Fame*, ll. 1507-11:

"And next him on a piler stood,

Of sulfre . . . .

Dan Claudian . . . .

That bar up al the fame of helle,

Of Pluto, and of Proserpyne."

l. 316. *Fortune the goddesse*. This is that Fortune that was known to the Middle Ages. Boethius gave her form and figure in the second book of *De Cons. Phil.* Dante places her in the Fourth Circle of Hell (c. vii), saying that for the splendors of the world there was ordained a general mistress and guide who should ever and anon transfer the vain goods from race to race, and from one blood to another beyond the resistance of human wit (Norton). This is the import of Cavalcante's fine Song of Fortune, beginning,

"Lo! I am she who makes the wheel to turn;

"Lo! I am she who gives and takes away."

She is shewn in full form with her wheel in the *Roman de la Rose* (2d part, ll. 4863-8492). The English *Romaunt* speaks of "The froward Fortune and contrarie" (l. 5414). Chaucer describes her as going upright and yet halting, as looking fair and yet foul (*Bk. of the Duch.*, ll. 642-5):

'She is th' envious charite  
That is ay fals, and semeth wele  
So turneth she her false whele  
Aboute, for it is no-thing stable."

Lydgate says in the *Mm. P.*, p. 122:

"Fortune shewithe ay, by chaungyng hir see,  
How this world is a thurghfare ful of woo."

For a later description of Fortune and her wheel see King James' *Quair*, st. 158-172. Fluellen said to Pistol (*K. Hen. V.*, Act III., Sc. 6): "Fortune is painted blind with a musfler afore her eyes, to signify to you that Fortune is blind; and she is painted also with a wheel, to signify to you, which is the moral of it, that she is turning and inconstant, and mutability, and variation; and her foot, look you, is fixed upon a spherical stone, which rolls and rolls." Note the painting of Fortune and her wheel by E. Burne-Jones. The mediæval Fortune was pictured by Raphael on the walls of the Vatican.

I. 316. *party face*. Cf. *Court of Love*, ll. 1101-2:

"Dissemble stode not ferre from hym in trouth,  
With party mantill, party hode and hose."

The *Temp. of Glas*, l. 1155, has the formula "in parti or in al."

I. 320. *gawdy grene chamelet*. Chamelet was a cloth made of camel's hair and silk. Cf. Chaucer, *Knights Tale*, l. 1221:

"In gaude greene hir statue clothed was (Diana)."

I. 322. *shoures*. Figuratively=distribution, bestowment. See another usage in I. 732=assault of battle.

**P. II.**, l. 325. *russet*. Russet was a name given to a coarse woolen cloth, reddish brown in color and commonly worn by shepherds; "clad in russet" was proverbial for homeliness. See Skeat's note in *Piers Plow.*, p. 208. The color is taken from the cloth. Cf. Shaks. *Hamlet*, Act I., i. 166:

"The morn in russet mantle clad."

*Fresc=friese*, a coarse woolen cloth.

I. 326. *tar box*. Every shepherd carried a box containing tar, which was used to anoint the sores in sheep. Cf. *Chest. Pl.*, p. 120:

"Heare is tarre in a potte  
To heale from the rotte."

Skeat cites a carol in a Balliol MS., 354 (notes to *Piers Plow.*, p. 195):

"The sheperd upon a hille he satt,  
he had on hym his tabard and his hat,  
hys tarbox, hys pype, and hys flagat."

See Percy's *Rclig.*, II., p. 256:

"And least his tarbox should offend, he left it at the folde."

I. 329. *the murre=a cold with hoarseness*. Cf. Skelton, *Magnyf.*, l. 2287: "And I gyve hym the cowghe, the murre, and the pose" (pose=rheum in the head).

I. 330. *Isys the goddesse*. Lydgate, in his *Fall of Princes*, describes again a number of the Divinities. Of Isis he says:

"She was right wise above other creatures,  
Secrete of cunnyng, wele experte in science,  
She taught first letters and figures  
To Egipciens by pleyn experiance,  
Yave theym cunnyng and intelligence  
To till the londe, taught the labourerys  
To sowe their greyne and multiplie by yeres."

I. 340. *in hys gyrdyll stede* =in place of his girdle. But cf. Stubbess' *Anat. of Abuses* where gyrdlestead, used as a noun, signifies waist (I., p. 60).

I. 343. *dysgysyd*—decked out in strange guise. Cf. Lang., *Piers Plow.*, Pr., l. 24:

“And some putten hem to pruyde . . . . comen *disgised*.”

Cf. *Seerees*, l. 1170:

“As the sonne shewith in his guyse.”

I. 344. *Mynerue*. Minerva as Pallas appears in Lydgate's *Temp. of Glas*, “with her cristal shield” (see Schick's notes, p. 87).

I. 350. *that other ye wote where*, i. e., on her breast.

I. 356. *kendall*. Probably the “Kendal Green,” formerly manufactured by the Flemish weavers who had established themselves in Kendall in the 14th century.

**P.** 12, I. 361. *meynt*—joined, p.p. of mingen. Cf. *Temp. of Glas*, l. 276:

“That Rose and lileis togedir were so meint;”

Spenser, *E. Q.* III, xi. 30:

“When she with Mars was meynt in joyfulnessse.”

I. 362. *ne were she*. A common M. E. idiom. Cf. *Piers Plow.*, Pr., l. 199:

“Nere (ne were) that cat of that courte that can yow ouerlepe;”

idem, *Pas* iii., l. 134:

“Shireues of shires were shent gif she nere;”

idem, *Pr.*, l. 82:

“Gif thei nere;”

Chaucer, *Man of Law's Tale*, l. 34:

“Nere (ne were) that a marchaunt, goon is many a yere;”

Lydgate in *Daunce of Poules*:

“Also ne were it myn entent.”

See Glossary of Chaucer's Works under “nere.”

I. 365. *Mercurius*. Mercury, as god of eloquence, appears in *Temp. of Glas*, ll. 130–32, and in Hawes' *Past. of Pleas.*, p. 34. Lydgate speaks of him in *Falls of Princes* as “Right freshe, ryght lusty and full of hardyness.” See Schick's notes, pp. 80–1. Cf. *Seerees*, l. 1207:

“In Rethoryk helpith Mercuriys.”

I. 365. *see*—seat. Cf. O. F. *se;* used in the sense of seat or throne in *Faery Queene*, iv., 10, 30.

I. 368. *passyd*—surpassed, excelled. Cf. *Flow. and Leaf*, l. 168:

“That of beautie she past hemi everichone.”

I. 371. *multypliers*. For the “cursed craft” of multiplying, its materials and processes, see the Prolog to the Chanouns Yeman's Tale and Gower's *Conf. Am.*, II., p. 84. The “spirits” employed were quicksilver, armoniac, sulphur and arsenic. The multipliers, along with coin washers and clippers, are classed among the vices (l. 681).

I. 373. *whoos long here shone as wyre of goold bryght*, i. e., as the fine glittering threads of goldsmiths' work. A favorite and tell-tale simile of Lydgate's. See Schick, *Temp. of Glas*, notes, p. 88–90; Kölbing, *Sir B. of Hamtoun*, notes, pp. 244–5; also the introduction to this text, p. lvi.

I. 374. *cryspe*—fresh or firm. Most often crisp meant curled, as when describing hair (cf. Chaucer, *Knights Tale*, l. 1307) or rippled, as Milton's “crispèd shades” (*Comus*, l. 984). Leigh Hunt has the present use in “It (laurel) has been plucked nine months, and yet looks as hale and crisp as if it would last ninety years.” Cf. Browning, *Ring and Book*:

“The first crisp youth that tempts a jaded taste.”

I. 374. *columbyne*—either dove-like or in color like the columbine. In Lydgate's *Pur le Roy* (Min. P., p. 8) the word is used in the first sense:

“Most columbyng of chere and of lokyng.”

Chaucer (in *March. Tale*, l. 897) has,

"Come forth now with thin eyghen columbine."

Venus is always, of course, associated with doves and roses. Cf. the *Knights Tale*, ll. 1102-4:

"And on her heed, ful semely for to see,  
A rose garland ful swete and wel smellyng,  
And aboven hire heed dowvies flikeryng."

Cf. any medieval or modern painting of Venus when represented as the "patronesse of plesaunce."

l. 383. *gladyd* made glad. For this transitive use of glad cf. Chaucer, *Bk. of the Duch*, l. 702:

"May gladden me of my distresse;"

*Ho. of Fame*, l. 902:

"And gladded me ay more and more;"

*Piers Plew.*, Pas. vi., l. 121:

"Shal no greyme that groweth glade yow at nede;"

*Temp. of Glas*, l. 1211:

"Hertes to glade itroubled with derkness;"

Browning, *King and Book*, p. 57:

"What else shall glad our gaze."

Cf. Wyclif *Magnificat*: "My spiryt hath gladded in God myn helthe."

Lydgate also uses, l. 532, "reioyse" (—make glad) which came to take the place of glad in this sense.

l. 389. *philosophyrs and poetes*. Lydgate follows Dante in placing the pagan philosophers and poets in Hell. See *Inferno*, c. iv. Dante mentions among the ancient teachers Socrates, Plato, Democritus, Diogenes, Anaxagoras, Thales, Empedocles, Heraclitus, Zeno, Dioscorides, Orpheus, Tully, Linus, Seneca, Euclid, Ptolemy, Hippocrates, Avicenna, Galen, and Averrhoes, and of course, Virgil, Homer, Horace, Ovid and Lucan. These were in the First Circle, which contained the spirits of those who lived virtuously but without Christianity. This is such a list as Hawes gives of those who have achieved fame, and also Douglas of those who inhabit the Palace of Honor.

P. 13, l. 397. *Orace, Ouyde and Omere*. This is the common spelling of these names. Cf. Chaucer, *Ho. of Fame* ll. 1466, 1477, 1487. *Omerus* is found in *Secrees* l. 378, etc. *Euclyte* occurs in *Min. P.* p. 88.

l. 400. *Orpheus*. He is mentioned also in *Temp. of Glas* (l. 1308), playing upon a harp.

l. 402. *carpe*. Commonly meaning to talk, the term is sometimes found applied to music, as here. Often in Lydgate in the sense of talk. Cf. *Chorl and Bird*, *Min. P.*, p. 191:

"It ware but foly wile the more to carpe";

*Secrees*, l. 708:

"To whoos counsayl in Arrabye folk carpe," etc.

See *carfyng*, l. 430.

l. 404. *to lawe*. Cf. Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, Pr. l. 474, "lawghe;" *Piers Plew.*, iv, l. 153, "lawghyng;" and *Secrees*, l. 2535:

"Man which lawheth with wyl and herte."

l. 408. *foysoun*. Cf. Chaucer, *M. Tale*, Pr., l. 57:

"So that he fynde Goddes foysoun there";

Lydgate, *Chorl and Bird*, *Min. P.*, p. 184:

"And of alle deynentes plente and foisoun;"

*Secrees*, l. 1644:

"Or drynk old wyn in greet foysoun."

It is used in *The Tempest*, II. 1.

I. 413. *the fest of Peleus*. The story is that Discord (Eris), being excluded from the feast of Peleus and Thetis, threw among the company a golden apple inscribed "To the fairest." Then arose the dispute between Hera, Aphrodite and Athena, wherein Paris was involved as judge of the fairest. The prize fell to Aphrodite, who gave to Paris Helen, whence rose the Trojan war. This was one of the most famous of the mediæval tales of romance. The strife of the goddesses is recorded in Gower's *Conf. Am.* Bk. V. The story is referred to in *Temp. of Glas*, ll. 461-67. Robert of Bruune gives a full account of the rape of Helen and the causes thereto in his *Chron.* ll. 459 *et seq.*

I. 425. *what in the deuylls date*. The meaning of this exclamation is indicated by a passage in Skelton's *Speke, Parrot*, ll. 437-38:

"Ryn God, rynde Devyll! yet the date of ower Lord  
And the date of the Devyll dothe shrewlye accord."

The Marriage charter of Lady Mede in *Piers Plow*. (Pass. ii) is sealed "in the date of the devil," as other documents are written in the date of the Lord. Cf Skelton, *Bowge of Court*, ll. 375 and 455:

"Lete theym go, lowse theym, in the deuylls date":

*Magnificence* ll. 2108 and 954:

"What neded that, in the dyuyls date!"

I. 426. *howe the game gooth*. Cf. *Rom. of the Rose*, l. 5030:

"But how that evere the game go."

**P. 14.** I. 441. *woo begoon*. The opposite phrase is "well begon" as in *Roman of the Rose*, l. 693.

I. 447. *my dart*. In mediæval imagery Death is most often represented as a skeleton figure hurling against all men a spear or a dart. Cf. *Mirror of the Per. of Man's Life*:

"Now schaketh he his spere to smite me";

*Court of Love*, l. 294:

"Though Deth therefore me thirlith with his spere";

Occleve, *De Reg. Prin.* (ed. Wright, p. 76):

"Death might have stayed his dart for a time."

See text l. 1935.

The identification of Atropos (here a male figure) with Death is one of the curious features of the poem. Cf. *Temp. of Glas*, l. 782-3:

"Right so shall I, til Antropos me sleithe

For wele or wo, hir faithful man be found."

Atropos is one of the fates in *Story of Thebes*, fol. 374.

Cf. Bullein, *A Dialogue against the Fov. Pest.* (E. E. T., p. 114):

"Me thinke I doe see the fearful horseman lighted in the valley with a marvellous fearful saying, *En adsum vobis mors ultima linia rerum*, etc. Oh, where shall we hide vs from him? Ife casteth forth the III darteres, and taketh them vp again . . . . it is merciless Death most fearful," etc.

II. 449 *et seq.* *Death's patent*. It was one of the favorite subjects of contemplation how death brought every man to an end, however exalted his estate. It was customary to refer to the "Nine Worthies"<sup>1</sup> by way of illustration; these were Joshua, Gideon, Samson, David, Judas Maccabæus, Alexander, Julius Cesar, Charles the Great, and Godfrey of Boulogne. When it was desirous to prove that the world was false and vain, the question would be asked, Where now is Solomon, Samson, Absalom, Jonathan, Cæsar, Dives,

<sup>1</sup> The Nine Worthies furnished stock illustrations to a late date. They are constantly referred to by the dramatists as by Beaumont and Fletcher in *Thierry* and *Theodoret* (Dyce ed. I, p. 143), *Laws of Candy* (V, p. 331), *The Double Marriage* (VI, p. 387), *The Prophetess* (VIII, p. 266). They appear on the stage in character in Middleton's *The World Lost at Tennis* (Bullen ed. VII, p. 165), where they are described by Pallas as they dance in the masque. They were favorite subjects for tapestry (Weber) as appears in Beau. and El. *Doub. Mar.* (Dyce ed. VI, p. 387):

"Thou woven Worthy in a piece of arras,  
Fit only to enjoy a wall."

Tully, or Aristotle (see *Hymns to the Virgin*, E. E. T., p. 86—c. 1400). Chaucer's list of those who have been brought low is given in the *Monk's Tale*; they are Lucifer, Adam, Sampson, Ercules, Nabugodonosore, Balthazar, Zenobia, Petro (of Spayne), Petro (of Cipres), Barnabo, Hugilin, Nero, Oli-phern, Antiochius, Alisaunder, Julius Cesar and Cresus. Hawes enumerates these whom Fame holds in remembrance: Hector, Josue, Judas Machabeus, Davyd, Alexander, Julius Sesar, Arthur, Charles and Godfrey (*Past. of Pleas.*) To illustrate the theme that all stand in change like a midsummer rose, Lydgate cites elsewhere David, Salomon, Jonathas, Julius, Pirrus of Ynd, Alexander, Nabigodonosor, Sadociopall, Tullius, Crisostomus, Omerus, Senec, and many knights (Min. P., p. 22; see also p. 122). Cf. the tone of the Roxbury Ballad *Farewell to the World*:

"For worldlie pleasure is but vanitie;

None can redeeme this life from death, I see;

Nor Cresus' wealth, nor Alexander's fame,

Nor Sampson's strength, that could Death's fury tame." Rox. B. II, p. 25. In that most doleful of poems Wiggleworth's *Vanity of Vanities* the motive is repeated in a new land:

"If Beauty could the Beautiful defend  
From Death's dominion, then fair Absalom  
Had not been brought to such a shameful end;  
But fair and foul unto the Grave must come."

If Wealth or Scepters could Immortal make,  
Then wealthy Croesus, wherefore art thou dead?  
If Warlike-force which makes the World to quake,  
Then why is Julius Caesar perished?

Where are the Scipio's Thunderbolts of War?  
Renowned Pompey, Caesar's Enemy?  
Stout Hannibal, Rome's Terror known so far?  
Great Alexander, what's become of thee?

—Libr. Amer. Lit. II, p. 17.

See also Lydgate's *Dance of Macabre* and *Story of Thebes*, fol. 387; Barclay's *Ship of Fools*, I, p. 264; *Love's Labor's Lost*, VI, 130; V, Sc. i, l. 130; Southwell's *Image of Death*, etc. Petrarch's *Triumph of Death* may also be compared.

**P. 15**, l. 470. *Nabigodonosor*. This is the pronunciation in Chaucer. The spelling *Nabuchodonosor* occurs in the Vulgate (Dan. I., iv); this is the usage of Gower (v. *Conf. Am.* Bk. I, near end), and Chaucer (*Monk's Tale*, l. 155; *Ho. of F.* l. 515), and Langland (*Piers Plow.* Pas. vii, l. 153).

l. 471, *Pharao* is the spelling of the Vulgate; Chaucer has *Pharo* (*Ho. of F.* l. 516) but *Pharao* in *Bk. of the Duch.* l. 282.

l. 490. *aldyrs*. The final s must be a scribal error; but cf. ll. 579, 590.

l. 492. Cf. Chaucer, *Knights Tale*, ll. 445-8:

"O cruel goddes, that governe  
This world with byndyng of youre word eterne  
And wryten in the table of athamaunt  
Your parlement and your eterne graunt."

l. 493. *pescoddys*. This is the form employed by Lydgate in Min. P., p. 105, *Secrets* l. 1374, and by Langland in *Piers Plow.* Pas. vi, l. 294, xiii (C), l. 221, and by Skelton *Why come*, etc., l. 108. The *Secrets* has  
"Benys type and pescoddys grene."

**P. 16**, l. 490. *brayde*=started up. Cf. *Esof*, Fab. 2, l. 90:

"Til sodainly al abrayde";

*Temp. of Glas*, l. 1054:

"Til at the last of routhe she did abraide";

*Secrees*, l. 308 :

"Till I abrayde in purpoos to resorte."

See "braid," N. E. Dict.

l. 501. *boody, blood and boony*s. "Blood and bone" is a common formula in the Metrical Romances.

l. 503. *malapert*. Cf. Lydgate, Min. P., p. 23:

"Clatering pyes . . . ."

Most malapert there verdict to purpose";

idem p. 166:

"Maleapert of chiere and of visage" (said of a jay).

l. 513. *leyte*. The other texts read "leytenyng"—which is, of course, meant.

l. 530. *hyt fell on a day*. Lydgate has this formula in Min. P., p. 74 : "It fil on a tyme."

l. 530. *wedyr*. Weddir is still the folk pronunciation in portions of Scotland. Cf. Barbour's *Bruce* III., l. 387:

"Till wyntir weddir war away."

P. 17, l. 534, *dresse*=direct. See l. 1512: "Myn ey gan I dresse." Cf. Chaucer, *M. Tale*, l. 282 :

"And to the chambre dore he gan him dresse ;"

*Gentl.*, l. 3 :

"Must folowe his trace and alle his wittes dresse."

l. 550. *ray*. Ray means properly a ray, streak, stripe; but was commonly used to designate a striped cloth (Skeat). See Lyd., *Lond. Lackpenny*, "a long gown of raye." The plural is found in *P. Pl. Pas.* v, l. 211, "Among the riche rayes." Barclay (*Ship of Fools*, I, p. 35) refers to honest ray=striped cloth. See *Mem. of Lond.* ed. Riley, I, p. 109 for definition—"one piece of striped cloth." Cf. Peele, *Edward I*, Sc. 6, l. 22 : "My milk-white steed treading on cloth of ray."

l. 561. Cf. Chaucer, *Man of L. Tale* l. 483:

"But tourne ayein I wil to my mateere ;"

Lydgate Min. P., p. 140 :

"But to resorte ageyn to my mateere."

l. 562. And tō | begyn | ne n̄ew | e whēre | I léft. Few lines run as smoothly as this. The final e comes naturally into use.

l. 563. *besy peyn*. The phrases "besy peyn" and "besy cure" are very common in Lydgate and Chaucer. See Lydgate's Min. P., p. 87; *Æsop*, Fab. 2, l. 55, Fab. 6, l. 136; *Secrees*, l. 738, 1012; Chaucer, *Parl. of F.* l. 369; *Compl.* l. 2, 119, etc. This text has it again in l. 746. Spenser uses the phrase as in *Faerie Queene* V. xii. 26.

P. 18, l. 507, *nat worth a pere*. The writers of the period had a variety of expressions signifying worthlessness. See l. 493, not give 2 pescoddes; l. 560, rekke nat a strawe; l. 1607, then a myte. Cf. *Mort. d'Art.* XV., cap. vi (ed. Southey, II, p. 254):

"Vayne glory of the world, the whiche is not worth a pere."

Chaucer has "Not worth a myte" in *Knights Tale*, l. 700, *Somp. Tale*, l. 253, *Sec. N. Tale*, l. 511, *Ch. Yem. Tale*, Pr. I. 80; "Not worth a flye" in *Parl. of F.*, l. 501; "Not worth a bene" in *Merch. Tale*. In the *Rom. of the Rose* are "Not worth a crooked brere," l. 6191; and "Not worth an hen," l. 6856. In *Piers Plow.* is "She counteth nougat a russhe," Pas. iii, l. 141. Gower uses "Not worth a kerse," *Conf. Am.* I, p. 334, and "Not worth a stre," I, p. 364. Skelton has "Set not a nut shell," *Col. Cl.* l. 1227. Cf. Dunbar, *Fre. Hon. and Nob.* l. 42 :

"Set not by this world a chirry."

Douglas says (Works II, p. 116, l. 10) : "I compt it neuir a myte."

I. 600. *dere*=injure. Cf. *Rom. of the Rose*, l. 4336 :  
" May falle a weder that shal it dere."

I. 601. *a son of mync*. With what an imperfect imagination Lydgate grasps the symbolism of his poem may be gathered by comparing this mere reference of Vice as the bastard son of Pluto with the mighty passage in Milton's *Par. Lost* (Bk. X) which describes the relationship of Satan and Sin and Death. Then I have misgivings for having attempted to revive this Lydgate; one then realizes the force of Prof. Lounsbury's remark in his *Studies in Chaucer* that it is unfortunate that the dead past cannot bury not only its dead but its bores.

I. 602. *vaward*=reduction of vantward. Cf. Shakes. *Hen. V*, iv, 3 :  
" I beg  
My lord, most humbly on my knee  
The leading of the vaward."

This form is found as late as Drayton's *Aigincourt*, Ode XII :  
" The eager vaward."

**P. 19**, ll. 610 *et seq.* the battle. Bunyan's *Holy War* offers many parallels to the conduct of this battle. Thus we are told that the Father appointed his Son to captain the forces of Good, that Emanuel chose five captains to accompany him, captains Credence, Good-hope, Charity, Innocent, and Patience, each with a standardbearer and holy escutcheon to advance ten thousand men. Emanuel rode at their head in a chariot. The army of Diabolus had set over it other captains: Diabolus the King, Incredulity, the Lord-general, the seven chief captains Beelzebub, Lucifer, Legion, Appollyon, Python, Cerberus and Belial, and minor captains Rage, Fury, Damnation, Insatiable, Brimstone, Torment, No-ease, Sepulchre and Past-Hope. This army, uncountable in number, set out from Hell-gate Hill and came by a straight course toward Mansoul, whose five gates (the five senses) they attack with varying fortune though with ultimate defeat. The general question of Bunyan's sources and models has not been fully considered. While it is apparent that he drew almost wholly from the Bible and his own conscience, yet his work must have been in part determined by the traditional accounts of Mansoul's Wars.

I. 612. *derayne*=set in order, prepare. Cf. Chaucer, *Knights Tale*, l. 773 :  
" Bothe sufficient and mete to darreyne."

Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* IV, iv, 26 :  
" Unable he new battell to darraine."

I. 617. *Fyce, etc.* It is possible to form from the drawings, Moral Plays and literature of the period a very accurate picture of the different vices as objectified in human symbol. If Lydgate is wanting here in descriptiveness it is probably because the work of delineation had been done before him and nothing more was needed beyond mere mention. Langland in *Piers the Plowman* (Pas. v) is especially realistic and dramatic :

" Now awaketh Wratthe with two whyte eyen,

" And nyuelyng with the nose and his nekke hangyng ; "

" Thanne come Sleuthe al bislabered, with two slyny eighen ; "

" Eche a worde that he (envy) warpe was of an addres tonge,

" Of chydlynge and of chalangynge was his chief lyfode,

" With bakbitynge and bismcr and beryng of fals witnesse."

See especially Covetousness quoted below (l. 626).

In such character the Vices were kept constantly before the people in play and pageant, which practice was continued until late as witnessed by Richard Tarlton's play of the Seven Deadly Sins, in which Lydgate himself is presented as moving the scenes (cf. Collier, *Hist. Dr. P.* III, p. 304), and by such a remark as that made by Dick Bowyer in *Tryall of Chevalry* (c. 1605, Old Plays, ed. Bullen, III): "If I had a pageant to present of the seven deadly sinnes, he should play Slouth." So long as these characters remained

before the people Lydgate's description was sufficient. I make this note because everywhere the relation between the pictorial, scenic and literary art of the period must be emphasized.

For the subjective conception see Chaucer's *Per. Tale* and Gower's *Conf. Am.*, etc. For a later characterization see Day's *Tractates* (c. 1000) ed. Bullen.

l. 617. *cure boyle*. This is one of many expressions relating to tournament which were introduced into literature, in this case from the French, during the Middle Ages. It means literally "boiled leather." It seems that the knights wore under their coat of mail a garment made either of silk and then called "wafenhemd" or of leather and called "curie." The latter garment was worn in France. It was made of strong leather made pliable by boiling. Chaucer in *Tale of Sir Th.* l. 164 uses the phrase, "His jambeaux were of quirboily," the term being interpreted as "tanned leather." Prof. Skeat (notes to *Pr. T.* p. 166) gives references to Marco Polo (ed. Yule, II, 49) where the men of Carajan are said to wear "armes euiraces de cuir bouille;" also to Froissart (V, IV, cap. 19) who says the Saracens covered their targes with "cuir bouille." The term occurs in Barbour's *Bruce* XII l. 21-2:

"And on his basnet hye he bar  
Ane hat off qwyrbolle ay-quhar."

In *Recuyell of the Hist. of Trewey* "armed well with quyer boullye" translates the Fr. "arnez de moult beaux habillemen courroyez."

See Cutts, *Scenes and Char. of M. A.*, p. 344.

l. 620. *croppē and roote*. Lydgate makes a very frequent use of this formula. See *Temp. of Glas.* l. 455:

"Humble and benyng, of trouth crop and rote."

See Schick's references in notes to *Temp. of Glas.* p. 98. Chaucer has it in *Troyl. and Crys.*, II., l. 348:

"And ye, that be of beaute crop and roote."

It occurs in Dunbar, *The Flyting*, l. 73:

"Thow crop and rute of traftouris tressonable."

It is an expression still common in Scotland (W. Gregor). Dunbar has also "crop and grayne" (*The Warhlis Instab.*, l. 99). Lydgate in Min. P. uses "roote and grondue" (p. 123), "gynnyng and roote" (p. 125), "gynnyng and ground" (238), and in this poem "roote and rynde" (l. 66). Caine in *The Manxman* (ch. xxii.) has "neck and crop" and Meredith the same phrase in *The Ordeal of Rich. Feverel*.

l. 621. *Pryde*. Pride is put the first as the master sin; by that sin fell the angels:

"For Lucifer with hem that felle

Bar Pride with him in to helle"—Gow., *Conf. Am.*, I., p. 153.

He appears again as General of the Army of Sin in Day's *Tractates* (Tract. 7, ed., Bullen, p. 55). See Introd. p. lxxii.

l. 622. *Pryde on a lyoun*, etc. In the symbolism of the Middle Ages animals were used as signs of vices and virtues. The custom was started by the theologians, notably Jerome. In certain of the early *Bestiaries*, as the *Renart le Nouvel* (1288) the animals were first associated with the Moralities. Dante in entering the dark wood was confronted by a leopard, a lion and a wolf, typical of certain sins. In the *Ancren Riwle* the symbolism is well established. In the processional described in the *Faerie Queene* (I., iv.) Idleness is seen riding upon an ass, Gluttony on a swine, Lechery on a goat, Avarice on a camel, Envy on a wolf and Wrath upon a lion. Bunyan makes some use of this traditional symbolism in the lions that guarded the palace Beautiful.

l. 622. *Envuy*. Envy is personified in the *Temp. of Glas.* l. 147; cf. also *Rom. of the Rose*, l. 248; *Court of Love*, l. 1254, etc. For the portrait of Envy see Spenser, *F. Q.*, V., xii., 29-32.

I. 626. *Coueytise*. A fine description of Covetousness is drawn by Langland in *Piers Plow*, Pas. v., ll. 188-94:

"And thanne cam Coueytise . . . .  
So hungriliche and holwe, sire Hervy hym loked,  
He was bitelbrowed and baberlipped also,  
With two blered eyghen as a blynde hagge ;  
And as a letherem purs lolded his chekes,  
Wel sydder than his chyn thei chueled for elde ;  
And as a bondman of his bacoun his berde was bidraueled."

This Vice is often mounted upon a horse that he may speed more quickly, as in *Evil Times of Ed.*, II. (Polit. Songs, p. 326):

"Coveytise upon his hors he wole be sone there  
And bringe the bishop silver, and rounen in his ere."

Covetise is personified in the *Temp. of Glas*, I. 244. The fifth book of Gower's *Conf. Am.* is devoted to Avarice.

I. 627. *olyfaunt*. This is the spelling of Maundeville and Skelton. "Oliphanthes" is found in Lyndesay's *Monarche*, I. 2295.

I. 631. *Sloethe*. Sloth is personified in *Temp. of Glas*, I. 244. See *Rom. of the Rose*, II. 531, 593, 1273, etc.; *Faery Queene*, I., iv, 18, etc.

I. 636. *Symony*. Note the feeling of Langland in this matter, *Piers Plow.*, Pas. ii., ll. 62-3, 86:

"Ac Symonye and cyuile and sisoures of courtes  
Were most pruye with Mede ;"  
the priests wish to live in London  
"And syngen there for symonye for silver is swete."  
See Dante's *Inferno* (c. xix.) for the punishment of the guilt of Simony.

P. 20, I. 640. *Ielacy*. Jealousy is personified in the *Temp. of Glas*, I. 148. See *Rom. of the Rose*, I. 3820; *Parl. of F.*, I. 252; *Quair*, 877.

I. 644. *Usury*. Usury was the special sin of Avarice (v. *P. Pl.*, Pas. v., I. 240-52). All usury was prohibited as a sin by the Canon Law (Southey, *Bk. of the Church*, p. 187). It was the theory of the schoolmen that the taking of interest was unholly since money was not of itself productive. Dante consigned usurers to one of the lowest regions of Hell. The continued prejudice in England against the money lender is testified by Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice*, and Bacon repeated the old theory, "It is against nature for money to beget money." Cf. a Roxbury Ballad (I., p. 420):

"The Usurers follow,  
That pawnes have in hand ;  
With whoop and with hollow  
They call for the Land  
Which spend-thrifts pawne to them  
While for cash they hye ;  
To live to undoe them  
This bargaine they'l buy."

I. 648. *Boldnes* [in] *Yll with Foul* [e] *Ry* [b] *audy*. In this line the final *e* in *foule* seems to be pronounced. But Text B and the Prints read *Foule* and *Rybaudy*.

I. 655. *Newfangelnes*. The love of novelty seems to have been considered a special vice of the times. Lydgate in *Min. P.* (p. 71) speaks of "the serpent of newfangelnesse" and says (p. 60):

"I-bannysshed have newfangelnesse  
And put in his place perseveraunce."  
Chaucer writes against "Women Unconstant":  
"Madame, for your newe fangelnesse  
Many a servant have ye put out of grace . . . .  
To newe thing your lust is ever kene."

See also *An. and Arc.*, I. 141; *Leg. of G. Wom.*, Pr., I. 154. Nichol New-

fangle is the "Vice" in the interlude *Like will to Like* (1568). This is also one of Stubbes' "Abuses" (p. 31).

I. 666. *Idynesse*. Lydgate calls Idleness the "Moder to vices" (Min. P., p. 88) and the "Chief porteresse" of the vices (Min. P., p. 68). In *Aesop* he says again that "Vice alle proceden of idelnesse." Cf. Chaucer, *Sec. Tale*, II. 1-3:

"The ministre and the norice unto vices,  
Which that men clepe in English ydelnesse,  
The porter of the gate is of delyces."

I. 668. *but there was an [h]ost!* Considering the chief vices as roots and stems, the secondary branches and twigs become innumerable. Thus Chaucer enumerates in the *Pers. Tale* among the twigs from the root of pride inobedience, avaunting, ypcrisye, despit, arraigance, impudence, swellying of hert, insolence, elacioun, impacieunce, strif, contumacie, presumption, irreverence, pertinacie, and veinglorie. This gives material and scope for incalculable growth and differentiation. Give the fancy play and in a moment one exclains with Barclay (*Ship of Fools*, I., p. 4):

"For yf I had tungen an hundredth : and wyt to fele  
Al thinges natural and supernaturall,  
A thousand mouthes: and voyce as harde as stelle,  
And sene al the seven sciences lyberal,  
Yet cowde I neuer touche the vyces all,  
And syn of the worlde : ne theyr braunches comprehendē :  
Nat thoughte I lyued vnto the worlds ende."

For the abundance of vices of the time of Henry VIII., v. *The Hy Way to the Spill-house* (Bartholomew's Hospital, London): description in Furnivall's ed. of *Capt. Cox*, etc. (Ballad Soc.) p. ci-ciii.—twenty-three sets of unfortunates. See especially the list of "unthrifts," p. ciii. Cf. Wyclif's list of sins in *Fifty Heresies and Errors of Friars* (ed., Arnold, III., p. 360). Cf. the vices that voyage in Barclay's Ship of Fools; also those satirized in Skelton's *Bowge of Court* and the list of rogues in the Miracle Play, *The Last Judgment* (Roxburghe Club). For the species of rogues and vagabondes in Elizabethan England, cf. Thornbury, *Shaks. Engl.*, I., ch. viii.; Decker's *English Villaines*, Harrison's *England*, II., ch. xi., *passim*; *Three Tracts about Old Rogues*, ed. by Viles and Furn. (N. Shaks. Soc.); Stubbes' *Anatomy of Abuses* (N. Shaks. Soc.). These enumerations throw much light upon the practical life of the time. Many of the Commons in Lydgate's list are not known to us even by name.

**P. 21**, I. 673 *et seq.* Langland groups "bakbiteres, breke-chestes, bawleres and chideres" (P. Pl., Pas. xvi., l. 43).

II. 674, 676. *fasers*=boasters, *crakers*=vaunters. See Skelton, *Garl. of Laur.*, II. 188-9:

"Some lidderons, some losels, some noughty packis;  
Some facers, some bracers, some make great crackis;"

Borde, *Bk. of Knovl.*:

"I wyll boost myselfe, I wyll crake and face;"

Barclay, *Ship of Fools*, I., p. 198:

"For greatest crakers ar nat ay boldest men."

I. 679. *scismatykes*. Cf. *Piers Plow.*, Pas. xi., I. 114-15:

"For Cryste cleped vs alle come if we wolde,  
Sarasenes and scismatikes and so he dyd the Jewes."

I. 681. *coyn wasshers and clyppers*. For the evil of counterfeiting, etc., cf. Hoccleve's *Complaint*, Min. P., xxi.

I. 685. *tregetours*. For the pretensions of these tricksters see *Frank. Tale*, II. 413-20:

"Which as the subtile tregetours pleyen  
For oft at festes have I herd seyen,  
That tregettoures, withinne an halle large,  
Han made in come water and a barge,  
And in the hall rowen up and doun;  
Sometryme hath semed come a grym leoun  
Som tyme a castel al of lym and ston,  
And whan hem liked voyded it anon."

I. 691. *stalkers by night*. A proclamation was made in London in 1329 to the effect that no one should be so daring as to go wandering about the city after the hour of Curfew (see *Memor. of Lond.*, ed. Riley, I, p. 173; II, p. 482).

I. 692. *brokers of lofedayes*. Love-days were days fixed for settling differences by umpire. Cf. *Cov. Myst.*:

"Now is the love-day mad of us fourre fynially,  
Now may we leve in pes as we were wonte."

A passage in Wyclif's Tracts (Works, ed. Arnold III, p. 322) throws light upon the custom. We see knights and yeomen kneeling in the castle-chapel, a general gathering in the hall, statements from both sides, arbitration and reconciliation (Arnold).

I. 693. *getters*. Cf. Barclay, *Ship of Fools.*, I, p. 146:

"Ye wasters and getters by nyght."

In Bunyan's *Pilg. Prog.* a schoolmaster who taught the art of "getting" either by violence or cozenage, flattery, lying, etc.

I. 694. *Tityvyllus*. Any person with evil propensities (Collier). Douce derives the name from *Titivillium*, a word used by Plautus. Collier suggests its derivation from *totus* and *vitis*. He appears in *The Mirroure of Oure Ladie* (E. E. T. p. 54) saying "I am a poure dyvel and my name ys Tityvillus." His office was to bring to his master every day one thousand bags of syllables skipped in reading and singing the divine service in the churches. He appears in this character in MS. Lansd. 762 (quoted by Wright):

"Hui sunt qui Psalmos corrumpunt nequirit alnios:  
Jangler cum jasper, lepar, galper quoque, draggar,  
Momele, for-skypper, for-reynmer, sic et over-leper,  
Fragmina verborum *Tutivillus* colligit horum."

He became a common figure in the plays as any evil fellow. He is one of the devils in the play of *The Last Judgment*, where he seems to be a churchman opposing the heresy of Wyclif. He is a fiend in a Townley Mystery (pp. 310, 319) and a lawless fellow in *Ralf Roister Doister*. He is a fiend in *Mankind* representing the sin of the flesh. Skelton (*Col. Cl.* I, 418) uses the phrase "and talkys lyke tytuelle," probably here a tale-bearer, in which character he appears in *Rogues and Tag.* (N. Shaks. Soc. p. 15). In Stubbes' *Anat. of Abuses* he is a flatterer (p. 122). The word occurs again in Skelton's *Garl. of Laur.*, I, 642. See Collier, *Hist. Dr. P.* II, pp. 146, 207, 223; Dyce's notes on Skelton; notes to *Mirror of O. Ladie*, p. 342.

I. 696. *carders*—card-players. For the punishment for cheating at play see *Mem. of Lond.* (ed. Riley, II, p. 305). "Turning the tables" was one method of cheating.

I. 696. *closkers*. This was a kind of game. Cf. Stubbes' *Anat. of Ab.* notes p. 316: an act of Hen. VIII.—"noe manner of person shall . . . kepe . . . any alley or place of bowlinge Coylinge, Cloyshc, Coyles, etc."

I. 697. *Tyburne*. The place of execution in London. Cf. Rowland's *A Fool's Bolt is soone Shot*:

"Of Tybourne (i. e. the gallows) common hve-way cannot fayle."

Harrison (*England* II, ch. 16) calls the halter a "Tiburne tippet." This was also the name of a prison in London. *Coloprys* means pieces of meat,

used figuratively often for children (as in *I. Hen.*, vi, v. 5). "Tyburne coloppys" may have been a slang phrase. Cf. *Cocke Lorelles Bote*, C. i. a.

l. 698. *double tollyng myllers* = those millers who tolled with a too "golden thumb."

l. 702. *brokers* = receivers of stolen goods etc. Cf. Stubb's *Anat. of Ab.* Pt. II., p. 40.

l. 707. *sotyll ambidextres* = Jacks-of-both-sides. "Ambidexter is that jurous or embraceour that taketh of both parties for the giving of his verdict" (Cowell's *Interpreter*). A tricksey character called Ambidexter appears in Bullein's *Dialogue against the Fier Pest*. (E. E. T. p. 20). Cf. Middleton, *Fam. of Love*, V, 3: "I'll play Ambidexter"; also Peele, *Sir Cly. and Sir Clam.*, sc. vi, l. 77. In an early American poem by Ebenezer Cook reference is made to

"an ambidexter Quack"

Who learnedly had got the knack

Of giving glisters, making pills,

Of filling bonds and forging wills"—*Libr. of Amer. Lit.* II, 273.

Stubb's in his *Anatomy of Abuses* speaks of "doble dealing ambodexters" (p. 141).

l. 708. *Sodomites*. Used by Stubb's to signify fornicators (*Anat. of Ab.* I. p. 145).

P. 22, l. 710. *wetewoldes that suffre syn in her syghtes*. A wittol was a tame "cuckold"—one who had knowledge of his wife's infidelity. Skelton, *Garl. of Laur.* I, 187, refers to "wetewoldis." Middleton in *Chast Maid of Cheapside* gives a picture of one. Cf. Shaks. *Mer. H. of Wind.*, II, 2:

"But cuckold! wittol-cuckold! the Devil himself hath not such a name."

Cf. *Loves's Labour's Lost*, v, 904-12:

"When Daisies pied and Violets blew  
And Cockow-buds of yellow hew  
And Ladie-smokes at silver white,  
Do paint the Meadowes with delight,  
The cuckow then on everie tree  
Mocks married men; for thus sings he.  
Cuckow!  
Cuckow! Cuckow! O worde of feare,  
Unpleasing to a married eare."

l. 711. *abominable*. This is the regular spelling of the N. E. abominable in O. Fr. and in English from Wyclif to the seventeenth century. This spelling is defended by Holofeines in *Love's Lab. Lost* against the "racker of orthography" who would say abominable.

l. 711. *auauntours*. Cf. Chaucer, *Pers. Tale*: "Avauntour is he that bosteth of the harm or of the bouné that he hath don."

l. 713. *vnthryffys*. Cf. Barclay, *Ship of Fools*, I, p. 2:  
"But such Unthristes as sue theyr carnal lust."

l. 714. *loselles*. Cocke Losel or Lorel was a generic term for a rascal. Cf. Browning, *Strafford*, III, 2, l. 170.

l. 717. *for to say*. The common M. E. usage. "For to fet," l. 1155.

l. 727. *I will anaantage take where I may*. Cf. the words of Legion in Bunyan's *Holy War*: "Therefore let us assault them in all pretended fairness, covering our intentions with all manner of lies, flatteries, delusive words."

l. 732. *mortal* = equivalent to "lethalis," deadly. Cf. *Aesop*, Fab. 4, l. 34, "Of mortal hunger."

l. 732. *shoure* = conflict, struggle. O. E. scúr. Commonly applied to the assault of battle. See line 1042.

I. 742, *to me ward*. Toward was frequently divided and the object inserted between the parts as here. Cf. II Cor. 3:4: "And such trust have we through Christ to God-ward."

**P. 23**, I. 748. *Imaginacion*. Note the part played by Imaginative in *Piers Plow*. Pas. xii.

I. 760, *mowte*. Mowe and mowte are common in M. E. See I. 264 where mought rhymes with fought.

I. 766, *lest and moost*. A common formula in Lydgate, Chaucer and other writers. Cf. *Ck. Tale*, I. 400:

"Faire they were welcomed bothe lest and meste."

Langland (*Piers Plow*, Pas. ii, I. 45) has "the lasse and the more."

I. 773, *trayne*. Cf. Fairfax's *Tasso*, II, I. 89:

"So lions roar, enclos'd in train or trap";

*Fairy Queen*, Bk. I, c. iii, st. 24:

"By traynes into new troubles to have toste."

Milton has "wily trains" in *Comus*, I. 151. Shakespeare uses it once in this sense in *Macbeth*, IV, 3.

I. 773, *coltrop* = a pointed iron instrument strewn in battle fields to hinder cavalry. Cf. Beaumont and Fletcher, *Love's Pilgrimage*:

"I think they ha' strew'd the highways with caltraps,

No horse dares pass 'em."

It occurs in Middeton, *Women Beware Women*. Cf. the proper name Caultrap.

I. 776, *lyce hys*. See "Vertew hys," I. 798 etc. The corruption of his for O.E.-ës, the genitive termination, is found as early as Layamon's *Brut*: "For Gwenayfer his love." "Ine was the forste mon that Peter his peny bigan" *Brut*, (B.) III., I. 285. The *Prayer Book* has "For Christ his sake." Cf. Stubb's *Anat. of Abuses* (1583) p. 75: "Every poore Yeoman his daughter, every Husbandman his daughter, and every Cottager his daughter." This use occurs in Spenser, Shakespeare and Bacon and did not die out until the eighteenth century. Ben Jonson, English Grammar XIII, calls it "the monstrous syntax of the pronoun *his* joining with a noun betokening a possessor"; and yet Addison, *Spectator* No. 135, writes that "the same single letter (s) . . . represents the *his* and *her* of our forefathers"; v. Marsh *Lectures* XVIII (Percival). In *Guardian* No. 98 Addison writes: "My paper is the Ulysses *his* bow." The use extended to the feminine gender and the plural number (v. *Cont. Dict.* under *his<sup>2</sup>*).

I. 776, *pursuaunte*. Cf. Chaucer, *Ho. of Fame*, I. 1321: "The pursevauntes and heraudes"; *Flow. and Leaf*, I. 232: "Of heraudes and pursevauntes eke." Shakespeare has: "These gray locks the pursuivants of death" (*Henry IV*, II, 5, 5). Browning uses it in *Blot in the Scrut*, Act 1, I. 4; and Tennyson in *Balin and Balan*: "A spangled pursuivant."

**P. 24**, I. 792, *fourre dorety knyghtys* - the virtues called "Cardinal" in accordance with the Platonic Ethics. These virtues together with the theological triad appear as maidens in Dantes *Purg.* (c. xxix) accompanying the chariot of the Church. This pageant of the advance of Virtue suggests that of the last five cantos of the *Purgatorio*. No doubt, such scenes occurred in the street processional plays. Note the pageant in the *Anti-Claudianus* with Reason as charioteer. (There is a vicar in *Piers Plow*, who said the only cardinals he knew were those sent by the Pope.)

I. 808, *Pacience*. In *Piers Plow*, Patience is described as a tree which grows in the heart and bears fruit of Charity. The tree is supported against the winds of the world, the flesh, and the devil by three props denoting the Trinity.

**P. 25**, l. 815. This line seems to be corrupted in the *MS.* which reads "was tra-  
pure was gay." *Trapure* refers to the "trappings" of the steed. Cf. *Flow.*  
*and Leaf*, II., 244-5:

"With cloth of gold and furred with ermine

Were the trappores of here stedes stronge,

Wide and large, that to the ground dide honge";

Lydgate, *Min. P.*, p. 118:

"Trappours of golde ordeyned were for stiedis";

Hawes, *Past. of Pleas*, p. 132:

"Wyth haute courage betrapped fayre and gaye

Wyth shyning trappers of curiosite."

l. 824. *to steuyn*. Stevne is always employed by Chaucer as a noun. It has here a verbal use probably from the necessity of the rime. There was, however, the older verb from stefnen (cf. *M. E. Dict.*, Strat.-Brad.). Douglas has (II., p. 225, l. 8): "towart the port thai stevin" = directed their ship; but this is from the Icl. stefna = prow. Chaucer has this set of rimes in *Kn. Tale*, II., 1720-21; *Troil. and Cris.*, III., ll. 1723-25; *Leg. of G.W.*, II., 1218-19.

l. 844. *Pouerte*. Poverty was a highly praised virtue in the Church. It is said in *Piers Plow.*, Pas. xiv., that this virtue preserves men from the Seven Sins, for it (1) is hateful to Pride, (2) has few responsibilities, (3) does not win wealth falsely, (4) is the gift of God, (5) is the mother of health, (6) is without peril of robbery, (7) is a source of wisdom, (8) deals fairly with others, (9) is without care. Feigned Poverty is one of the Vices, l. 657.

**P. 26**, l. 854. *Kounnyng with hys genatology*. That is to say the Seven Arts and Sciences. The seven sciences as originally distinguished were Mathematics, Geometry, Astronony, Music, Ethics, Physics and Metaphysics. The seven arts were: Grammar, Dialectics, Rhetoric (the trivium) and Arithmetic, Music, Geometry, and Astronomy (the quadrivium). These are mentioned familiarly by all the learned writers of the Middle Ages. They were characterized also in the plays and pageants and such objectification gives meaning to the processional of the poem. In Lydgate's description of the King's entry into London there is an account of a spectacle representing the Seven Sciences. The name of Priscian is associated with Grammar ("the roote of alle connyng"), Aristotle with Logic, Cicero with Rhetoric, Boethius with Music, Pythagoras with Arithmetic, Euclid with Geometry, and Albusmasar with Astronomy ("alder-highest"). In *Piers Plow.*, the sciences appear as sons of the Clergy, serving the Lord of Life in a castle (Pas. xiii). See Gower, *Conf. Amur.*, Lydgate's *Purle Roy*, *Chestre Plays* (Wright, p. 241), Hallam, *Lit. of Europe*, etc.

ll. 867-870. The Magical and Black Arts. The specific "Black Arts" were commonly five: Necromancy, Pyromancy, Geomancy, Hydromancy, and Aerimancy, signifying divination by means of the dead, fire, the earth, water, and the air respectively. These species are indicated by Hugo de S. Victore (see Skeat's Notes to *Piers Plow.*, p. 246). Gower *Conf. Amur.*, III., p. 45, describes these five kinds in detail; see also Lydgate's *Secrees*. As to the merits of the magical arts, opinion was divided. The Black Arts were almost universally denounced in this period in England. Alchemy and Physiognomy were, however, often employed. It seems that there was a revival of Magic, and especially of Alchemy, during Chaucer's and Lydgate's lifetime. But we find that sorcery, soothsaying and magic were punished in London as early as 1382, the affirmation being that "the art of magic redounds against the doctrine of Sacred Writ"; the punishment was exposure upon the pillory (*Mem. of Lond.*, ed. Riley, II., pp. 462, 472, 518). A statute forbidding the practice of Alchemy was passed in 1403. The art was revived again at about the end of the century, so that Henry VI. appointed three Royal Commissioners to investigate the subject. Their report is dated 1456 (see *The Antiquary*, Sept. 1891, for documents illus-

trating the revival of Alchemy at about the middle of the fifteenth century). We find that Alchemy was condemned by Gower (*Conf. Am.* II., p. 88); Alchemy and other arts by Langland (*Piers Plow.*, Pas. xi., ll. 207-15); the magical arts in general by Chaucer (in *Ch. Yeo, Tale*, and *Pers. Tale*) and Lydgate (in the present instance and *Secrees* st. 82-84—though favorable to physiognomy, st. 353-54, and in *Story of Thebes* [fol. 390], where he condemns Bishop Amphioxus to hell as the mode of his idolatry and magic) and Barclay (*Ship of Fools*, II., pp. 18, 191, 210). As a matter of fact, Alchemy flourished in spite of condemnation and belief in it continued far into the seventeenth century (see *Faery Queene*, I., c. i., st. 36-37 and Sir Th. Browne, Works I., ch. x.). In Ward's *O. E. Drama*, Introduction to Marlowe's "Dr. Faustus," the general attitude of the M. Ages toward magic and magicians is shown. See *Secrees*, notes, p. 93-95.

I. 868. *Glotony.* This must be a mistake of the scribe for Alchemy.

I. 870. *Patomestry.* Divination by the lines of the hand.

I. 882. *Ches.* Cf. *Ezop*, Fab. 5, l. 71:  
"The crane chase a surgeon to be";  
*Temp. of Glas.*, l. 214, 330:  
"Would freli chese."

Note *leese* l. 1100.

I. 886. *ware of contagious geere.* Contagious geere =?

**P. 27**, I. 887. *lere.* "Lere" here means learn; "lerne" in I. 957 means teach. Cf. *Temp. of Glas.*, l. 297, 1021 = learn:

"Fro dai to dai that I myghte lere";  
idem, l. 656 = teach:  
"Than cometh dispeire and ginneth me to lere."  
Cf. *Story of Thebes*, fol. 378:

"The which beasts as the story leres."

I. 895. *secte.* Cf. *Rom. of the Rose*, l. 5745:  
"Eke in the same secte or sette."

I. 896. See note on l. 1097.

**P. 28**, I. 925. *then I reherse can.* Cf. *Temp. of Glas.*, l. 560: "as I reherse can" and often.

I. 932. *Macrocosme.* I interpret this to mean Microcosm from the interpretation by Doctrine, st. 262. For the conception of Microcosm see *Secrees*, ll. 2313-17:

"In beeste nor thyng vegetable,  
No thyng may be vnyuersally  
But yif it be founde naturally  
In mannys nature. Wherfore of oon accord  
Oold philisoffres callyd hym the ltel woord (worlde)."

See also Stubbess, *Anat. of Abusis*, p. 111:

"And therfore, wheras in making of other things he used only this Woord, FIANT, be they made or let them be made, when he came to make Man, as it ware advysing hymselfe and asking eoucancell at his wisdome, he said FACIAMUS HOMINEM, let us make Man; that is a wonderful Creature: and therfore is called in Greek MICROKOSMOS, a litle world in himself. And truely he is no lesse, whether we consider his spirituall soule, or his humaine body, etc."

For a fuller account of Man, the Microcosm, assailed by Vices and defended by Virtues, see Fletcher's *Purple Island*, the most dreadful of all the Holy Wars.

I. 939. *hygh weyes syue.* All the old books make much of man's five senses,

the high-ways of Mansoul. Note the use made by Bunyan of this conception in *Holy War*:

"The famous town of Mansoul had five gates at which to come, and out at which to go; and these were made likewise answerable to the walls, to wit, impregnable, and such as could never be opened nor forced but by the will and leave of those within. The names of the gates were these: Ear-gate, Eye-gate, Mouth-gate, Nose-gate, and Feel-gate."

l. 941. *blyue*. Cf. Chaucer, *Bk. of the Duch.* l. 152 :  
"Go now faste, and hy thee blyve;"

*Æsop*, Fab. 4, l. 206 :  
"With ravenous feete, wynged to flee blyue."

P. 29. l. 957. *lerne hem a new daunce*. A common saying with Chaucer and others. Cf. *Rom. of the Rose*, l. 4300 :

"For she knew alle the olde daunce."

Cf. Chaucer, *Troyl and Crys.* II. l. 554; *Dr. of Ph. Tale*, l. 79; *Cant. Tales*, Pr. l. 470. Cf. Gower *Conf. Aman.*, I., p. 260 :

"Now shalt thou singe an other songe."

l. 974. *dubbyd*. Cf. *Piers Plow.* Pas. i., ll. 102-3 :  
"For Daud in his dayes dubbed knighthes"

And did hem swere on here swerde to serue trewthe euere."

In *Ad. Dav. Dream* (E.E. T., l. 76) "dubbing" is a substantive and means decoration.

P. 30, l. 998. *Reson*. Reason is a common personification. See *Rom. of the Rose*, 3034, 3193; Lydgate's *Min. P.*, p. 219; *Piers Plow.* Pas. xv., xvi.; Dunbar's *Gold. Targe*, 151, etc. In *Piers Plow.* Reason has many names: anima, animus, mens, memoria, ratio, sensus, conscientia, amor, spiritus. He plays an important part in the poem.

l. 1009. One instance of a double negative. Cf. *Æsop*, Fab. 4, l. 53 :  
"I may no favour do to nowther side."

l. 1012. *hyng in hys balaunce*. A very common figure. Cf. *Temp. of Glas*, ll. 641, 348; Chaucer, *Troyl. and Crys.* II., l. 466 :

"And ek myn emes lyf is in balaunce."

In Barclay's *Ship of Fools* is a wood-cut showing the world and things eternal in a balance. Cf. Spenser's figure in *Faerie Queene* V., ii., 30-49.

l. 1012. *ambyguyte*. Chaucer has amphibologyes, *Troil. and Cris.*, iv., l. 1406.

P. 31, l. 1023. *sewe the feld*. Lydgate probably had in mind the parable of the Sower. Langland has a parable of the ploughman in Pas. xix.; there the weeds of vice grow in the field but they are uprooted by the harrow of the Law.

l. 1038. *swage*. I define as "discharge" but find no authority for it except the context.

l. 1038. *gonnes*. The first mention of guns or "gonnes" as being in use in England is found in an inventory of munitions of war in a London document dated 1339 (see *Mem. of London*, ed. Riley, I., p. 205). These "gonnes" were made of brass or "latone" and fired "pellets of lead," using gunpowder. Cf. Chaucer *House of Fame*, III., l. 553 :

"Swift as a pellet out of a gonne,  
When fire is in the powder ronne";

Lydgate's *Story of Thebes*, fol. 302 :  
"Noise more hideous then thunder  
Of gonne shot."

The word was also employed to designate a machine that cast stones. Cannon is mentioned in Barbour's *Bruce* (1375) Bk. XIX., l. 399. Cannon had been used in Florence in 1326.

**P. 32**, l. 1063. *abew=a beau*. Gower has the phrase in *Conf. Aman.*, III., p. 356:

"Er thou make any such assaies  
To love and faile upon thy fete  
Better is to make beau retrete."

The word beau was commonly used in address as in *Rom. of the Rose*, l. 800:  
"What do ye there, beau sir?"

*Sir Gawain*, E.E. T., l. 1222:

"Nay, for sothe, beau syr";  
also *House of Fame*, l. 643. Cf. *Rich. Redé*, Pas. iii., l. 1.  
"Now leve we this beau brid."

l. 1063. *lytyll tyne*. Cf. Skelton, *Carl. of Laur.* l. 505:  
"A lytyll tyne stande backe";

Heywood, *Dialogue*:

"For when prouender prickt them a little tine."  
The two words generally occur together. See l. 1283.

l. 1066. *by lyklynnes*. Cf. *Temp. of Glas.*, l. 18; Chaucer, *Am. Compl.* l. 15  
*Cl. Tale*, II., l. 200, etc.

l. 1089. *lowte*. Cf. *Zisop*, Fab. 2, ll. 17-18.  
"Whan sulphur toward the dawenynge  
Lowtith to the oyrent";

*Piers Plow*, Pas. iii., l. 115:

"Knelynge, Conscience to the kyng louted."  
See also text, ll. 1439, 1925, vnderlowte 1273.

Cf. Browning, *Ring and Book*:

"I have louted low."

**P. 33**, l. 1094. *Perséueraunce*. The accent as in Chaucer.

l. 1095. *hogy*. Cf. Marlowe, *Tamb. the Gt.*: "my hugy host." This was Dryden's usage.

**P. 34**, ll. 1142-6. The way of repentance is made clear by Chaucer's Parson: "Now shalt thou understande what bihoveth and is necessarie to verray parfyte penitence; and this stondith in thre things, contricoun of hert, confessioune of mouth, and satisfacioun." The first, said the Patience in *Piers Plow*, (Pas. xiv.), saves men, the second slays sins, the third uproots sin altogether. Contrition and Confession appear as two horses that bear ripened grain to the house of Unity (*Piers Plow*, Pas. xix.). They are good dames in Hawes' *Past. of Pléas*, giving sure passage to Purgatory to Graunde Amour. They are characters in the *Moralities*. The trihal stairs in Dante's *Purgatorio* (c. ix.) refer to these stages of repentance. All these figures refer to the creed of the Church as expounded for instance by Thomas Aquinas in his great work *Summa Theologica* (III. p. 90).

l. 1147. *fro poost to pylour*. Cf. Barclay, *Eclipses*:

"From post unto piller post shall thou be."

l. 1154. Despair appears in *Temp. of G.* l. 656. He was a common figure in the mediæval imagination. Cf. Spenser's treatment of Despair. (See a paper by Dr. F. L. Carpenter reported in Univ. of Chicago Cal. Aug. '95.)

l. 1158. *Alpha and Oo*. This occurs in the *Creation*, sc. I., York Plays, in the address of the Deity:

"I am Alpha and O."

**P. 35**, l. 1167. *borow*—verbal. Cf. Chaucer, *Cl. Tale* l. 204:

"For he hath slayn my two sones, but if God hem borwe";  
the old play, *World and Child*:

"Some good word that I may say  
To borow man's soul from blame."

See also *Piers Plow*, Pas. iv., l. 108-9.

This word was often used as a noun as in *Tem. of Glas*, l. 1145:  
 "And as for him I will bene his borow,"  
 and in the phrase "to borow" (=for a security).

l. 1169. *tenebris*. Cf. Hawes' *Past. of Pleas*, p. 15, 74:  
 "Auster gan cover with clowde tenebris";  
 "The night was wete, and also tenebrous."

l. 1185. *fly*. This is the reading of MS. B. A has *sty* from *stigen*, to ascend.

**P. 36**, l. 1204. *bettir late then never*. Cf. Chaucer, *Ch. Yeo. Tale*, l. 399:  
 "For bet than never is late."

l. 1226. *sothe*. Cf. Chaucer, *Parl. Fou.*, l. 578, "sothe sadde"=sober truth.

l. 1232. *as a pleyer*. Collier in a note on this passage (*Annals of the Stage*, p. 31) refers to player as an actor, interpreting the line to mean that Sensuality must change his character like an actor. But "to drawe a draught" is used of games as chess. Thus Chaucer (*Bk. of the Duch*, l. 682) has  
 "I wolde have drawe the same draughte."

In a work described by Collier (*An. of Stage*, p. 63) entitled *The Church of Yvll men and women* players refers to gamesters, dicers, etc.

"Player" would seem to mean here "gamer"; though it is possible that "draught" may be used here figuratively for "character" as Collier suggests.

**P. 37**, l. 1242. *finaunce*. Cf. Skelton, *Erlz of Vn*, l. 195:  
 "With thy bloud precious our finaunce thou did pay";  
 the same line occurs in Percy's *Reliques*, I, p. 125.

l. 1255. Reason in Microcosm. Cf. description of Reason in the *Romaunt of the Rose*, ll. 3193 *et seq.*, where she warns against the follies of Love. Chaucer's Parson says:

"For it is soth, that God, and reasoun, and sensualité, and the body of man, be so ordeyned, that everich of these four thinges schulde have lordschipe over that other, as thus: God scholde have lordschipe over reasoun, and reasoun over sensualité, and sensualité over the body of man."

Cf. Lydgate *Min. P.*, p. 219:

"Sith thu were wroughte to be celestial,  
 Let reson brydle thy sensualite."

l. 1256. *recreaunt*. This was a word which Knights uttered in acknowledging defeat. "Yelde hym recreaunt" = yielded himself as a defeated knight. The oath taken by a combatant ran thus: "Je suis prest de le prouver de mon corps contre le sien, et le rendre mort ou recreant . . . et vitez cy mon gage." The customary form of demanding surrender was: "And bif thou yeld thee as overcome and recreaunt thou shalt die." Cf. *Sir Gawayne*, E. E. T., l. 456:

"Therfore com other recreaunt be calde."

*Piers Plow.* (Pas. xv, l. 133) has "yelde hym creaunt" (as a believer?); "creaunt" is sometimes used for recreaunt in the sense explained above.

l. 1267. *astert*. Cf. Chaucer, *Fr. Tale*, l. 294:  
 "He seith, he may not fro his deth asterte."

**P. 38**, l. 1268. *Nature*. Nature was given especial personification by Alanus de Insulis in his *Planctus Nature* (Wright ed., Rec. Ser., pp. 431-456). Chaucer in the *Parl. of Foules* describes her as a Queen surrounded by the animals of the earth and air (ll. 298-301, etc.). In Langland's dream Nature appears and shows the wonders of the world (Pas. xi, l. 311-25). She was an empress in the pageant that welcomed Henry VI. to London (*Pur Le Roy*). See the *Faerie Queene* VII, vii.

- l. 1274. *shoo clothe*=shoe-cloth. Cf. Skelton, *El. Rum*, ll. 143-4:  
 "Some wytth a sho clout  
 Bynde theyr hedes about."
- Browning his "clouted shoon" (*Ring and Book*, p. 321).
- l. 1299. *blered*. Cf. *Rom. of the Rose* l. 3912:  
 "That almoost blered is myn yhe";  
*Chaucer, Maun. Tale*, l. 148:  
 "Far al thy waytyng, blered is thin ye."  
 See also *Rv. Tale*, l. 120; *Piers Plow. Pr.* l. 74; *Rox. Ballads I*, p. 163;  
*Milton's Comus*, ll. 153-6:  
 "To cheat the eye with blear illusion";  
*Shaks. Tam. of Shrews.* V, i:  
 "While counterfeit supposes blear'd thine eyne."
- P. 39**, l. 1311. *astonayed*. Cf. *Tem. of Glas*, l. 24:  
 "I wex astonayed."
- l. 1317. *howe a devyll way!* Cf. *Chaucer, M. Tale.* Pr., l. 26:  
 "Tel on, a devil way!";  
 idem, l. 527:  
 "And let me slepe, a twenty devyl way";  
*Ch. Yeo. Tale*, Pr. ll. 229-30:  
 "And al the cost on twenty devel waye  
 Is lost also";  
*Leg. of G. Wom.*, VI, l. 292:  
 "A twenty devel way the wynde him dryve."
- l. 1327. *longeth*. Cf. *Secrees*, l. 1020:  
 "Of all such vertues as longe to a kyng."
- P. 40**, l. 1340. *Resyduacion*=back-sliding. The term occurs again in *Skelton, Col. Cl.* ll. 523-5:  
 "And of resydeuacyon  
 They make interpretacyon  
 Of an aquarede facyon."
- P. 41**, l. 1384. *wyseshe*. Cf. *Chaucer, A. B. C.* l. 155; *Ho. of Fame* ll. 489-91; *Temp. of Glas* l. 637:  
 "So wisse me now what me is best to do";  
*Piers Plow. Pas.* v, ll. 540-562:  
 "I shal wisse you witterly the weye to his place."
- l. 1386. *as I gesse*. Cf. *Chaucer, Bk. of Duch.* l. 35; *Compl. of M.* l. 195; *Parl. of Fou.* ll. 160, 200, 223; *Cant. Tales*, Pr. l. 82; *Knight's Tale*, l. 192; *Lydgate, Min. P.*, p. 54. Cf. *Dunbar, Gold. Targe*, l. 230:  
 "God Eolus, his bugill blew I gesse."
- l. 1403. Death and dread. Among the Roxburgh Ballads (I, p. 312) is one which runs as follows:  
 "Lament your sinnes, good people all, lament,  
 You plainly see the Messenger is sent,—  
 I meane grim Death, and he doth play his part;  
 He stands prepar'd to strike you to the heart."
- This is accompanied by the cut of a hideous skeleton with a dart. Cf. *Piers Plow. Pas.* xx, ll. 198-200:  
 "And as I seet in this sorwe I say how kynde passed,  
 And deth drowgh niegh me, for drede gan I quake,  
 And cried to kynde out of care me brynge."
- P. 43**, l. 1448. *vra*. This word occurs in French law—*mis en ure* (Kelham). Its use was maintained in England through the 16th century. I find it in an early American poem, Wigglesworth's *Day of Doom* (1662):  
 "The best of men had scarcely then  
 Their Lamps kept in good ure."

l. 1455. *sesyne*. A law term denoting the ownership of property. To take *seizen* refers to the ceremony of taking possession of one's freehold. Cf. R. of G. *Chr. Reign of Wm.* l. 528:

"Ac wende him out of Normandie anon to Engelande  
Vorto nime hastiliche seisine of is lande."

See *Morte Arthur* (Th. MS.), l. 3589.

l. 1463. *fyn fast shut*. I make *fyn* an adverb with the force of very or completely. The word *finliche* in the phrase "finliche well" (= very well) occurs in *Sir Bevis of Hampton* l. 4052; also *afin* with the same meaning in l. 2577: "The bescop was glad *afin*." Chaucer uses *fyn* as an adj. in *Troil. and Cris.* V. 421: "of lyne force" (= of very need). Cf. our use of clean = completely, as in "clean laid aside," and of pure as "the pure death" (= death itself).

P. 44, 1479. *herber wallyd round about*. Doctrine's arbor is probably in imitation of the Garden of Mirth in *Rom. of the Rose*:

"And when I had a while goon,  
I saugt a gardyn right anoon,  
Ful long and brood, and every delle  
Enclosed was, and walled welle,  
With highe walles enbatailled,  
Portraied without and wel entailed  
With many riche portraitures."—ll. 135-141.

Cf. the Tower of Doctrine in Hawes' *Pastime of Pleasure*, written in imitation evidently of Lydgate's arbor: Graunde Amour is taught wisdom by learned dames, the Seven Sciences. All these may be suggestions of the Noble Castle of Learning in Dante's *Inferno* (c. iv) with its scholastic walls.

l. 1483. *Wytte*. In the homily of the *Sawles Warde* man is described as a house whose master is Wit. Wit's wife is named Will.

l. 1491. *perfyste*. Cf. *Secrees*, ll. 365, 387, 273: "In parfight clernessee."

l. 1509. *dalyaunce*. Dalyaunce in Lydgate seems always to refer to speech. See Schick's quotations, notes p. 91. In the *Pilgrimage of Man* "longe dalyaunce" translates the French "longe parlement." Cf. *Temp. of Glas*, l. 291:

"Of port benyngne, and of *daliaunce* (address);"

*Aesop*, Fab. 6, l. 93:

"That we togydre may have oure *daliaunce*;"

Min. P., p. 71:

"Countrefeteth in speche and *daliaunce*;"

*Secrees*, l. 2706:

"Lawhyng visage is good in *daliaunce*."

l. 1512. *myn ey gan I dresse*. Cf. *Temp. of Glas*, l. 850:  
"Gan cast hir eyen."

P. 45, ll. 1515 *et seq.* *on tho walles was made memory*, etc.

Douglas evidently imitates these pictures of sacred history in his account of the reflections seen in the mirror of Venus (*Works* I., pp. 57-59)—another poetical device of the same kind. See Introd., p. lvii.

l. 1538. *Judyth*. Judith is often mentioned in M. E. Lit. Cf. Chaucer, *M. of L. Tale*, 841; *March. Tale*, l. 122; *Monks Tale*, ll. 561-584; *Piers Plow.*, Pas. xvii., l. 21, etc. The account of the O. E. epic of Judith was probably known by the side of the version in the Vulgate.

P. 46, ll. 1562 *et seq.* These pictures are drawn from the frescoes on monastery walls whereon it was customary to present the saints with their traditional attributes. Lydgate's descriptions represent late traditions—those of the 13th and 14th centuries (note the attribute of St. James—the scallop shell, given him after the 13th century). The attribute of Peter was the key;

Paul held a sword; James the Great was a pilgrim with a long staff, wearing a cape with a scallop shell on his shoulder or hat, etc. Other pictures were the "Martyrdoms" which represented the manner in which the saints were slain: Thomas by a spear, Philip on the cross, James the Less by a club, Bartholomew by flaying, Simon and Jude, always together, by a sword and club, etc. There will be remembered in this connection Albert Dürer's picture of St. Thomas who is seen holding a lance, and Angelo's Last Judgment where Bartholomew appears holding his skin in one hand and the knife with which he was flayed in the other. Many other pictures will be recalled, and this is a necessary process in reading Lydgate—of the Apostles and Fathers as here displayed. For the emblems of the Apostles and Saints cf. Jameson, *Sacr. and Leg. Art.* Cf. the *Ornulum V.* i., p. 201 and note; *Cors. Mun.*, p. 1218; Lyndesay's *Monarche*, ll. 2279 *et seq.*

**P. 47, l. 1583. Baede.** One does not meet with many late references to Baeda. He is mentioned however, by Dante in *Par. c. x.*, l. 131; and by Wyclif (*Works*, I., p. 35; III., p. 477).

**l. 1584. Orygene.** An Alexandrine Greek, born A. D. 185. Bitter controversy arose regarding his views on the final salvation of men, the transformation of man's earthly body at the resurrection, etc. His "errors" are contained chiefly in his work, *περὶ ἀπόκρισίν τοῦ Οριγένης*. A private "error" is also recorded of Origen to which reference here may be made. See Butler's *Lives of Saints*, ix., p. 300.

**l. 1589. Sybyll.** "The pictures of the Sybils are very common, and for their prophecies of Christ in high esteem with Christians."—Sir Th. Browne. In the account of Varro the sybils numbered ten.

**l. 1608. houyd.** Cf. *Chorl and Bird*, 187: "Hovyng above his hedde" (said of a bird).

**l. 1614. gall.** Gall-trees were those that, like the oak, bear bitter galls. Spenser has "trees of bitter gall" (*Faery Queen*, II., vii., st. 52).

**P. 48, ll. 1618 *et seq.***

The whole discourse of Doctrine is written in the light of Catholic doctrine and practice. There is a certain kind of ingenuity exercised in the handling of the materials, but beyond a skillful presentation of doctrine there is not the least display of poetic genius in all this part.

**P. 49, l. 1657. made her beardys on the newe gete**—changed their purpose. Palsgrave defines "new get" as "guise nouvelle." Cf. Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, Pr., line 682:

"Him thought he rood al of the newe get;"

*M. Tale*, l. 130: (a kirtil)

"Schapen with goores in the newe get;"

Skelton, *Magnifi.*, l. 458:

"The courly gyse of the newe iet."

Those who cut their beards in the latest fashion had a place in Barclay's *Ship of Fools* (I., p. 35). Cf. the phrase, "To make one's beard" = to deceive; as in Chaucer, *Reeves Tale*, l. 170:

"Yet can a miller make a clerkes berd."

Cf. *Hos. of Fome*, l. 689; *W. of B. Tale*, Pr., l. 361.

**P. 50, l. 1714. habundaunce.** So in Chaucer's *Fortune*, l. 20.

**l. 1718. gryffyng.** Cf. *Secres*, l. 2373:

"Which gryfyd on stokkys haue many braunchys,"

**P. 51, l. 1728.** Cf. *Aesop*, Fab. 7, ll. 64-5:

"Men may at the ie se a pref  
Of this matere."

ll. 1737 *et seq.* The Times. In the Calendar of the *Cursor Mundi* there are seven ages: (1) from Adam to Noah; (2) from Noah to Abraham; (3) from Abraham to David; (4) from David to Solomon; (5) from Solomon to the birth of Christ; (6) from the birth to the death of Christ; (7) from the death of Christ to the Day of Doom, the period of Antichrist.

Cf. also Wyclif, *Works*, I., p. 99.

Gower has a reading of the Times similar to Lydgate (Prol. *Conf. Am.*), agreeing especially in the Time of War.

**P. 52,** l. 1772, *that ys to say*. Very common in Lydgate. Cf. *Temp. of Glas*, ll. 311, 426, 512, 715, 1124, etc.

l. 1784, *fynte hit in thy mynde*. A favorite phrase with Lydgate. Cf. Min. P., p. 36.

**P. 53,** l. 1805, *cast in a boon*. Cf. Chaucer, *Kn. Tale*, l. 319 :  
“We stryve, as doth the houndes for the boon.”

**P. 54,** l. 1829, *the lesse worlde*. This is Milton’s “less universe” (*Par. Reg.*, iv., l. 458). Said Sir Th. Browne (*Relig. Med.*): “That we are the breath and similitude of God, is indisputable and upon record of Holy Scripture; but to call ourselves a microcosm, or little world, I thought it only a pleasant trope of rhetorick, till my near judgment and second thoughts told me there was a real truth therein.”

l. 1844, *dampnacion*. So Chaucer in *Pd. Tale*, l. 38; *A. B. C.*, l. 167.

l. 1852, *inwarde wyttes*. Man was regarded as having five outward and five inward wits. Cf. *World and Child*, Dods, I., p. 273:

|       |                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Age   | “Of the five wits I would have knowing.                                                                                                                                |
| Pres. | Forsooth, sir, hearing, seeing, and smelling,<br>The remenant tasting and feeling:<br>These being the five wits bodily,<br>And, sir, other five wits there been.       |
| Age.  | Sir Perseverance, I know not them.                                                                                                                                     |
| Pres. | Now, Repentance, I shall you ken,<br>They are the power of the soul :<br>Clear in mind, there is one<br>Imagination, and all reason,<br>Understanding and compassion.” |

Hawes, in *Pastime of Pleasure*, enumerates the five inward wits as common-wit, imagination, fancy, estimation and memory. The five senses perform the outward offices, being simply receptive gates, but the wits perceive and judge. From this distinction arose the figure of the senses as gates, or as highways of the soul.

“Thet inewyt hys the dore-ward,  
The doren wyttes fyve”—Shoreham, Per. Soc., p. 55.

“For tho (the five wits) be properly the gates,  
Through which as to the hert algates  
Cometh all thing unto the feire,

Which may the mannes soule empeire”—*Conf. Am.*, I., p. 52.  
The inward senses were then the faculties of the mind. Thus Lydgate says (*Temp. of Glas*), ll. 380-1:

“With al my reson and alle my ful mynde, and five wittes.”

The Five Senses were personated in Middleton’s *Triumph of Truth* (1613). They appeared in character at the King’s entry into London in 1603 and again at the Lord Mayor’s Pageant in 1681 (Bullen). The different senses are enumerated in Elfric’s Homilies, O. E. Homilies, Sawles Warde, etc. Cf. *Piers Plow.*, Pas. i., ll. 15-16; Wyclif’s Tracts (III., p. 117); *Tale of Mel.*; *An Orysoun for sauyngē of the fyve wyttes* (Vern. MS. E. E. T., xvii); *Interlude of the Four Elements*; Lydgate’s Min. P., p. 253; *Faery Queene* (II., xi, st. 7); Fletcher’s *Purple Island*; Bunyan’s *Holy*

*War*, etc. Cf. a modern book entitled *The Five Gateways of Knowledge*, by Dr. Geo. Wilson, and *Lect. and Addresses*, by Sir W. Thomson, on the *Six Gateways of Knowledge*.

- P. 54, l. 1855. *stremes*. Cf. *Tempt. of Glas*, ll. 702, 582:
- "For with the stremes of hir eyen clere."

l. 1858. *sauns*. Commonly found in the phrase "sauns faille," as in Chaucer, *Ho. of Fame*, ll. 188, 420; *Man of Law's Tale*, l. 493; *the Court of Love*, l. 117 ("withouten faille," l. 710); Rob. of B. *Chron.*, l. 4507. *Piers Plow.* (Pas. xii, l. 286) has "saunz reule;" Skelton, *Why Come*, l. 426, "saunz auльтer remedy."

l. 1860. *blynne*. Cf. Rob. of B. *Chron.*, l. 2263:

"Evere to brenne and nevere to blynne;"  
Percy, *Reliq.*, III, p. 46:  
"On thy striking doe not blinne."

- P. 55, l. 1872. *wyre*. Cf. Chaucer, *Ho. of Fame*, l. 979:
- "Tho gan I wexen in a were;"  
*Rom. of the Rose*, l. 4468:

"Withoutte deceyte or ony were;"  
*Piers Plow.*, Pas. xi, l. 111; xvi, l. 3; *Tempt. of Glas*, ll. 651, 906 and see Schick's notes p. 104. Cf. Dunbar's *Man, sen thy Lyfe is ay in Weir*.

l. 1886. *daryng as a dustard*. Said in irony.

l. 1887. *Come of* — make an end. Probably our modern slang phrase "come off." It was in common usage in M. E. Cf. Chaucer, *Troil. and Cris.*, II, 310:

"Com of, and tel me what it is."  
*Tempt. of Glas*, l. 1272:

"Cometh off at ones, and do as I haue seide."  
See Schick's notes, p. 119, for further references; also Skelton, *Magnif.*, l. 103:

"Come of, therefore, let se."

l. 1887. *thy wytte stant a crooke*. See also ll. 1918, 1932. Cf. Chaucer, *Ho. of Fame*, l. 621:

"Although that (wit) in thy hede full lyte is;"  
Lydgate, *Chord and Bird*, Min. P., p. 191:

"Thy brayne is dul, thy witte is almoste gone;"  
*Piers Plow.*, Pas. i, l. 138:

"Thow doted daiffe,' quod she, 'dulle arne thi wittes;' and cf. Emerson, *The Sphinx*:

"Dull Sphinx, Jove keep thy five wits."

l. 1897. *tonne*. Lydgate has again (Min. P., p. 170) the rime tonne, sonne, and in *Secrees*, ll. 249-50. Referring to Diogenes Lydgate says:

"His paleys was a litel poore tonne."

- P. 57, l. 1952. *as blak as a coole*. Other objects of comparison with blackness were raven, crow, the devil, jet, ink and soot. Cf. *Conf. Am.*, II, p. 335:
- "With fetheres blacke as any cole."

l. 1953. *crodyn in a mouse hoole*. Cf. Skelton, *Why Come*, ll. 289-91:

"Our barons be so bolde,  
Into a mouse hole they wolde  
Rynne away and crepe."

- P. 58, l. 1997. *my wyt ys soo thynne*. See l. 896. Middle Engl. writers were fond of acknowledging the weakness of their wits. Thus Chaucer confesses in the Prol. of the Tales (l. 746) "My wit is short." His Marchant said (l.

438) "My tale is doon, for my wit is thinne." Again the poet writes (*Hv. of Fame*, ll. 1179-80):

"Ne can I not to yow devyse (Temp. of Fame)

My wit ne may me not suffyse;"

and to describe the beauty of his lady (*Bk. of the Duch.*, l. 898):

"Me lakketh bothe English and wit."

Lydgate was even more self-deprecatory (for references see *Temp. of Glas* Introd. p. cxl-cxli and *Secrees*, p. xx).

"Make his wittes thyinne" occurs in *Ch. Yeo. Tale*, Pr. l. 189; cf. R. of B., *Chron.* l. 113.

**P. 59**, l. 2080. *knette*. See line 991 *knyt*, 1186 *knet*. Cf. *Temp. of Glas*, l. 1230, "The enott is knytt."

**P. 60**, l. 2065. *God knoweth and nat I*. An allusion to Paul's saying, II Cor. xii, 2-3.

l. 2070. *take the best, etc.* Cf. Chaucer, *N. Pr. Tale*, l. 623:

"Takith the fruyt and let the chaf be stille;"

*Conf. Aman.* I, Pr. p. 32:

"The chaf is take for the corne;"

Lydgate's *Min. P.* p. 149:

"Cheese we the roosys, cast away the thorn;"

idem, p. 173:

"Wedyde the cokkelle frome the puryd corne;"

*Secrees*, l. 734:

"As vndir chaaf is closyd pure corn;"

idem, l. 1224.

"Woord is but wynd; leff woord and take the dede;"

*Story of Thebes* fol. 370:

"Avoiding the chaffe . . .

Enlumining the true piked graine."

**P. 61**, l. 2079. *three enymyes*. The World the Flesh and the Devil were figuratively spoken of as foes or robbers or wild beasts or adverse winds etc. In O. E. Homilies (Morris p. 241) they are described as foes and again as robbers. According to Boccaccio the three beasts which hindered Dante's progress represented these forces. In *Piers Plow.* (Pas. xvi) these are winds that blow against the tree of Patience. Chaucer's *Tale of Mel*, reads "Thou hast doon synne ageinst oure Lord Crist, for certes the thre enemyes of mankinde, that is to saye, thy flesche, the feend, and the world, thou hast y-suffred hem to entre into thin herte wilfully, by the wyndow of thy body, and hast nought defended thiself sufficiently agayns here assautis, and here temptaciouns, so that they have woundid thi soule in fyve places, that is to sayn, the dedly synnes that ben entred into thin herte by thy fyve wittes."

"And thus it falleth

That thorugh the fende and the flesche and the frele worlde

Synneth the sadman a day seuene sythes" (*P. Pl.* Pas. viii, l. 38-44).

The Devil was thought to work by Pride, Wrath and Sloth; the World by Covetousness and Envy; the Flesh by Gluttony and Lechery. Hawes gives a similar exhortation in *Past. of Pleas.*

"Than in your mynde inwardly despysye

The brytle worlde, so full of doublenes,

With the vyle fleshe, and ryght sone aryse

Out of your slepe of mortall hevynes;

Subdue the devill with grace and mekenes,

That after your lyfe frayle and transitory,

You may than live in joye perdurable."

l. 2087. *guerdoun*. A favorite word of Lydgate's. Cf. *Zsof.* Fab. 3, l. 64; Fab. 5., ll. 21, 25, 35; Fab. 6., ll. 145, 165; *Min. P.* p. 76, "a gwerdonles guerdone"; *Temp. of Glass*, ll. 806, 1139; *Secrees*, l. 900, etc.

I. 2105, *benyngne Ihesu*. Cf. Lydgate's *Testament Min.* P. p. 236: "O gracious Ihesu! benyngne and debonayre." No one can question the piety of these monkish writers. Cf. Hawes' closing, the *Past. of Pleas.*

"Nowe blessed lady of the health eternall,  
The quene of comfort and of heavenly glory,  
Praye to thy swete sonne whiche is infinall,  
To geve me grace to wynne the victory  
Of the devill, the worlde, and of my body,  
And that I may my selfe well apply  
Thy sonne and the to laude and magnifie."

Skelton, looking back upon such writers, especially upon Lydgate and his *Assembly of Gods*, acknowledges their authority — those poets

"Whyche full craftely,  
Vnder as conerte termes as could be,  
Can touch a trouth and cloke it subtyly  
Wyth fresshe vterauance full sentencyously;  
Dyuverse in style, some spared not vycce to wryte,  
Some of moralyte nobly dyde endyte."

— *Bowege of Court, Pr.*

To conclude, the significance of Lydgate in the history of literature I understand to be this: Taking his work in its entirety he seems to embody the forces that were shaping England during the late Middle Age in a more conspicuous manner than any other Middle English author. Chaucer stands out, of course, the supreme genius of the period, original and creative, the glory of the Court, the herald of the Renaissance. After Chaucer, in point of creativeness, ranks Langland the mystic, the scholar, the churchman, the prophet of the Reformation. Now the progress of literary history is often most clearly marked, as Mr. Gosse well maintains, in the less monumental figures of any period. The very genius of Chaucer and Langland removed them somewhat from the effects of environment. With Lydgate there is not much question of personal force. What is valuable in his work arises from his lack of originality and very incapacity as a poet. He is the product of his age — at one time yielding himself to the Romantic tendency, spending his youth in pleasure, writing ballads, romances, plays and histories for the King and Court. Then the love of Mother Church detains him, he assumes the cowl, and lives and dies at Bury St. Edmund. As a result of living in his environment no other early English author can equal him in the scope of his interests. He copied and translated everything that came to his hand. His work embraces ballads, lyrics, epics, allegories, fables, moral romances, social satires, histories, philosophical and scientific treatises, hagiologies and devotional manuals. The Romantic and the Scholastic blend in him in this remarkable manner. Because of his contemporaneity his rewards accrued to him in his lifetime. He was patronized by the Court and lived in the favor of his fellow-poets. For a century his fame was maintained, and his influence was even stronger than Chaucer's upon Burgh, Hawes, the Scottish poets, and laureate Skelton — his fame and influence passing with the traditions that gave them effect.

In the matter of language Lydgate is perhaps more typical of his period than Chaucer. Chaucer's whole linguistic system is for his time forced and artificial. Middle English does not have the regularity and certainty which Chaucer's usage seems to imply. Not a one of his successors could support his literary dialect. James's *Quair*, purposely composed in the Chaucerian manner, is artificial to the extreme. Lydgate's poetic incapacity compelled him to fall back upon the current speech. In short, in this, as in all other respects, Lydgate was the immediate product of his environment. He wrote not for all time but for an age.

## CATALOG OF PERSONS.

(The numbers refer to lines except those marked st.=stanza).

### LYDGATE.

The poet performs a twofold function; he is one of the prime movers in the vision (v. especially his fear of Death, st. 277-286) and at the same time the conscious teller of the story, never forgetting the "gentle reader." (a) As an actor: goes forth to the lake's side and dreams, st. 1, 2; accompanies Morpheus to the Court of Minos, st. 3-5; attends the banquet given to

the gods, st. 27-87; a spectator on the field of battle, st. 88-210; at the school of Doctrine, st. 211-290 (fears Death, st. 277-286); returns to his bed, st. 291, 292; awakes and writes st. 293-296.

(b) References to himself as narrator, st. 76, 81, 160, 171, 214, 222, 228, 229, 230, 294-301.

### THE DIVINITIES (AT THE ASSEMBLY).

Apollo, the God of Light, the giver and director of the banquet, st. 24, 25, 27, 28, 30, 32, 34, 35, 36, 37, 55, 73, 103, 189; interpretation by Doctrine, 237.

Atropos, the God of Death; is met by Discord, st. 60; makes complaint to the gods, st. 61-71; is promised aid against Virtue, st. 72-75, 81-87; threatens the gods, st. 138; is angered at the success of Virtue, st. 188-192; seeks the Lord of Light, st. 198-199; is called Death, st. 201; is made master of Microcosm, st. 203, 207-209; vanishes, st. 210; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 257-260; makes Lydgate to fear, st. 277-279; the fear of Death explained, st. 280-288.

Aurora, the Goddess of the Dawn, the companion of Apollo at the banquet, st. 37, 55.

Bacchus, the God of Wine, at the banquet, st. 51.

Cerberus, the Porter of Hell; brings Eolus to the Court, st. 6, 79; to the banquet, st. 27; is sent to summon Vice, st. 87-88; porter of Hell, st. 167.

Ceres, the Goddess of Corn, at the banquet with Cupid, st. 42; said to be influenced by Pheebe, st. 52; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 245.

Cupid, the God of Love, at the banquet, st. 43.

Diana, the Goddess of the Wood and the Chase, complainant at the Court of Minos, st. 6-11, 22, 80; dismisses the case to attend the banquet, st. 25-27; is persuaded by Apollo to forgive Eolus, st. 28-34; at the banquet with Mars, st. 38-39; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 235-239.

Discord, the Goddess of Strife, comes to the banquet but is given no seat and departs in anger, st. 59-60; conspires with Atropos, st. 60-62; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 257-260.

- Eolus, the God of the Winds, a prisoner at the Court of Minos, st. 6-26, 76-80; judgment is suspended for the banquet, st. 28-35; is forgiven, provided he give aid to Atropos against Virtue, st. 75, 81-84; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 233-234.
- Fortune, the Goddess of Chance, at the banquet, st. 46; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 246.
- Isis, the Goddess of Fruit, at the banquet, st. 48; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 246.
- Juno, the Goddess of Riches, at the banquet, st. 40.
- Jupiter, the God of Wisdom, at the banquet, st. 39.
- Mars, the God of War, at the banquet, st. 38; agrees to assist Atropos, st. 73-74.
- Mercury, the God of Language, at the banquet, st. 53; agrees to assist Atropos, st. 74.
- Minerva, the Goddess of War, or of Harvest, at the banquet, st. 50.
- Minos, the Judge of Hell, in Court, st. 4, 6-20, 79-80.
- Morpheus, the Shewer of Dreams (dwells in Fantasy l. 35); leads Lydgate to the Court of Minos, st. 2-5, 79, to the palace of Apollo, st. 27; is sent to warn Virtue, st. 103-107; is given care of the five gates of Microcosm, st. 184-186; conducts Lydgate to the School of Doctrine, st. 210-212, 223, 231, 268, 270, 277; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 265; leads Lydgate to his bed, st. 290-292.
- Neptune, the God of the Sea, complainant at the Court of Minos, st. 6-7, 12-20, 80; dismisses the case to attend the banquet, st. 25-27; accepts Phœbe as arbitress, st. 34-35; at the banquet, st. 49; said to be ruled by Phœbe, st. 52; agrees to aid Atropos, st. 73; is requested by Phœbe to forgive Eolus and complies, st. 82-83; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 235-239.
- Othea (Athena), the Goddess of Wisdom, at the banquet, st. 44; counsels the gods, st. 75; is referred to, st. 82.
- Pan, the God of Shepherds, at the banquet, st. 47; serves as minstrel, st. 58; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 246.
- Phœbe, the Goddess of Waters, the Moon; the mistress of Neptune, st. 35; at the banquet, st. 52; entreats Neptune, st. 81-83.
- Pluto, the God of Hell, father of Vice, st. 86-87; at the Court in Hell, st. 4, 6-24; dismisses the Court for Apollo's banquet, st. 24-27; declares the complaint against Eolus, st. 29; at the banquet, st. 45 (how Eolus came into Pluto's power, st. 76-79); sends for his son Vice to overthrow Virtue, 85-87; commands Vice, st. 138; "On in Pluto's name," l. 1077.
- Saturn, the God of Cold, at the banquet, st. 40, 41; agrees to assist Atropos, st. 74.
- Venus, the Goddess of Love, at the banquet, st. 54.

#### POETS AND PHILOSOPHERS.

(WAITERS AT THE BANQUET, ST. 56-58; INTERPRETATION BY DOCTRINE=FEIGNERS OF FABLES, ST. 241-249.)

- Albert, 398.  
 Arystotyll, 390.  
 Aueroys, 394.  
 Auycen, 394.
- Dorothe, 391.  
 Dyogenes, 391, 1397, 1399.  
 Esculapion, 396.  
 Euclyde, 398.

Galyen, 395.  
 Hermes, 393.  
 Ipocras, 395.  
 Messehala, 392.  
 Omere, 397.  
 Orace, 397.  
 Orpheus, 400.  
 Ouyde, 397.

Plato, 392.  
 Saphyrus, 393.  
 Socrates, 392.  
 Sortes, 393.  
 Sychero, 390.  
 Tholome, 391.  
 Virgyle, 397.

## THOSE SLAIN BY ATROPOS WITH HIS DART (st. 64-69)

Achilles, 474.  
 Alexaunder, 464.  
 Artour, 466.  
 Cesar, Iulius, 465.  
 Charles, the Noble, 467.  
 Cirus, 474.  
 Cosdras, 473.  
 Dauid, 466.  
 Ector of Troy, 463.

Godfrey of Boleyn, 469.  
 Hanyball, 473.  
 Hercules, 472.  
 Iason, 472.  
 Iosue, 466.  
 Iudas Machabee, 468.  
 Nabugodonozor, 470.  
 Pharao, 471.  
 Sypio, 473.

## THE MORALITIES.

Virtue, Christ's Champion (l. 1103). Atropos complains to the gods that Virtue escapes his dart, st. 69-70; the gods conspire to conquer, st. 72-75, 81-87; is warned by Morpheus to prepare for the battle with Vice, st. 103-105; gathers his hosts, st. 107-133; hastens to the field Microcosm, st. 135; charges his men to be guided by Grace, st. 136; gives knighthood to fourteen captains; sends ambassadors to Freewill; engages in battle, st. 148-162; is compelled to retreat, st. 152; returns to the field, st. 160; overthrows Vice with the help of Preseverance, st. 162; is rewarded and blessed by Predestination, st. 168-169; thanks God for the victory, st. 170; is sought for by some of Vice's host, st. 171-174; seeks recompence from Freewill, st. 174-179; puts Reason and Freewill in charge of Microcosm, st. 180; charges Sensuality to be guided by Sadness, st. 181-183; gives to Morpheus the care

of the five gates, st. 184-186; returns to his castle, st. 187; (Apollo informs Atropos that Virtue is not in his jurisdiction, st. 190); sends messengers to Microcosm, st. 197; prepares the field against the coming of Death, st. 204-207; is exalted above the firmament, st. 210; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 261-266; the moral, st. 297-301.

Virtue's host, st. 109-132, pauses under the Sign of the Rood, st. 149; is protected by the Shield of the Holy Trinity, st. 150.

Imaginacion, messenger of Virtue, 748,  
 757.

Messengers=

Prayer, 1377.  
 Fastyng, 1377.  
 Penaunce, 1377.  
 Almesdede, 1378.

Baptyme, the leading captain, 951, 1081,  
 1090, 1105, 1198, 1211, 1216.

Perseuerance, captain of the rearguard,  
 1094, 1115, 1125, 1129.

- Constaunce, 1128.  
 Knights, guides of Virtue's car= Ryghtwysnes, 795, 1385, 1394, 1401, 1418.  
 Prudence, 796.  
 Strenght, 797.  
 Temperaunce, 798.  
 Seven chief captains= Humylyte, 801, 1142.  
 Charyte, 804, 1435.  
 Pacience, 808.  
 Lyberalyte, 811.  
 Abstynence, 814.  
 Chastyte, 818.  
 Good Besynesse, 821.  
 Embassadors sent by Virtue to Freewill= Reson, 998.  
 Discretion, 998.  
 Good Remembraunce, 998, 1452.  
 Minor captains dubbed knights by Virtue (14)= Feythe, 986, 1082, 1089, 1105, 1196, 1208, 1210, 1435.  
 Hope, 986, 1082, 1089, 1105, 1196, 1435.  
 Mercy, 986, 1194.  
 Trouthe, 986.  
 Ryght, 986.  
 Resystence of Wrong, 987.  
 Confession, 988.  
 Contricion, 988.  
 Satisfaccion, 988.  
 Verrey Drede of God, 989.  
 Performyng of Penaunce, 989.  
 Perfeccyon, 990.  
 Konnyng, 990.  
 Good Dysposicion, 990.  
 The minor captains led by Grace; 1st group (57)= Grace, 853, 948.  
 Trew Feythe, 828.  
 Hoope, 828, 986, 1082, 1089, 1105, 1196, 1435.  
 Mercy, 828, 986.  
 Peese, 828.  
 Pyte, 828.  
 Kyght, 829.  
 Trowthe, 829, 986.  
 Mekenesse, 829.  
 Good Entent, 829.  
 Goodness, 830.  
 Concorde, 830.  
 Parfyte Vnyte, 830, 1082, 1105.  
 Honest Trew Loue, 831.  
 Symplycyte, 831.  
 Prayer, 832, 1377.  
 Fastyng, 832, 1377.  
 Preuy Almysdede, 832, 1378.  
 Artycles of the Crede, 833.  
 Confession, 834, 988, 1143, 1429.  
 Contricion, 834, 988, 1145, 1429.  
 Satysfaccion, 834, 988, 1146, 1429.  
 Sorow for Synne, 835, 1430.  
 Gret Repentaunce, 835, 1430.  
 Foryeuenes of Trespas, 836.  
 Good Dysposicion, 836, 990, 1431.  
 Resystence of Wrong, 837, 987.  
 Performyng of Penaunce, 837, 980, 1148, 1377, 1432.  
 Hooly Deuocion, 838, 1431.  
 Good Contynuaunce, 838.  
 Preesthood, 839, 1424, 1426.  
 Sacramentes, 839; the Sacrament of Eukaryst, 1428, 1439; Holy Uncion, 1444.  
 Sadnesse, 840, 1233, 1265, 1270, 1349, 1355, 1301, 1374, 1380, 1436.  
 Commaudementes, 840.  
 Sufferanne in Trouble, 841.  
 Innocency, 841.  
 Clennesse, 842.  
 Continence, 842.  
 Virginite, 842.  
 Kyndnesse, 843.  
 Renerence, 843.  
 Curtesy, 843.  
 Content, 844.  
 Plesyd with Pyteous Pouerte, 844.  
 Entendyng Well, 845.  
 Mynstryng Equyte, 845.  
 Hooly Indifferency, 846.  
 Laboryng the Seruycce of God to Multyply, 847.  
 Refuse of Rychesse, 848.  
 Perfeccion, 840, 990.  
 Parfyte Contemplacion, 849.

- Relygyon, 850.  
Profession well kept in Memory, 850.  
Verrey Drede of God, 851 (989).  
Holy Predycacion, 851.  
Celestiall Sapience, 852.  
Goostly Inspiracion, 852.  
Minor captains led by Cunning; 2d group (17)=  
    Konnyng, 854, 872, 876, 931, 990,  
    1105.  
    Gramer, 855.  
    Sophystry, 855.  
    Naturall Philosophy, 856.  
    Logyk, 856.  
    Rethoryk, 856.  
    Arsmetry, 857.  
    Geometry, 857.  
    Astronomy, 857.  
    Canon, 858.  
    Cyuyle, 858.  
    Musyk, 858.  
    Theology, 859.  
    Physyk, 859.  
    Moralizacion of Holy Scripture, 860.  
    Poetry, 861.  
    Drawyng of Picture, 861.  
Minor captains; 3d group (9)=  
    Moderat Dyete, 885.  
    Wysdom, 885.  
    Euyn Wyght & Mesure, 886.  
    Ware of Contagious Geere, 886.  
    Lothe to Offende, 887.  
    Louyng ay to Lere, 887.  
    Worshyp, 888.  
    Profyt, 888.  
    Myrthe in Manere, 888.  
Commons with Virtue, numbering one-tenth of Vice's host=  
    Doctours, 897.  
    Prestes, 899.  
    Confessours, 899.  
    Declarers of Holy Scripture, 900.  
    Rebukers of synne, 901.  
    Fysshers of fowles, 902.  
    Lovers of clennes, 903.  
    Dyspysers of veyn & worldly ryches,  
    903.  
    Prelates (pesyble), 904.  
Gouernours (iustciall), 904.  
Founders of churches, 905.  
Peeres (mercyfull), 905.  
Reformers of wrong, 906.  
Merchauntes (well menyng), 908.  
Artyfyceres (trew), 908.  
Vyrwyns, 909.  
Innocentes, 909.  
Matronys (hooly), 910.  
Contynentes, 910.  
Pylgryms, 911.  
Palmers, 911.  
Laborers (trew), 911.  
Hooly Heremytes, 912.  
Goddess Solycitous, 912.  
Monkes, 913.  
Freres (well dysposyd), 913.  
Chanons, 914.  
Nonnes, 914.  
Professours (feythfull), 914.  
Coniugatoures of worldly people,  
915.  
Louers of Cryst, 916.  
Confounders of yll, 916.  
All that to godward yeue her good  
wyll, 917.  
Mayntenours of ryght, 918.  
Verrey Penytentes, 918.  
Destroyers of error, 919.  
Causers of Vnyte, 919.  
Performers of mercy and pyte, 921.  
Contemplatyf peple, 922.  
Vyce, son of Pluto, st. 86, 87; summoned  
    by Pluto to do battle against Virtue,  
    st. 87, 88; leads towards the field of  
    Microcosm, st. 137-139; is charged  
    by Pluto to overthrow Virtue, st. 138;  
    dubbs fourteen knights; sends embassadours to Freewill, st. 144; sends  
    Sensuality into the field to scatter  
    evil seeds, st. 146-147; engages in  
    battle, st. 149-150; is reinforced by  
    Freewill, st. 151-152; causes Virtue  
    to retreat, st. 152-155; is overthrown  
    by Virtue, st. 160-162; leaves the  
    field by a private gate and meets with  
    Despair, st. 165; is driven to tor-  
    ment by Prescience, st. 166-168;

- interpretation by Doctrine, st. 261-266; moral, st. 297-298.  
 Vice's host, st. 89-103.  
 Oryginal cryme =  
     Messenger of Vice, 776, 781, 950, 955.  
 Seven chief captains =  
     Pryde, 621.  
     Enuy, 622.  
     Wrethe, 624.  
     Coutyse, 626.  
     Glotony, 628.  
     Lechery, 630.  
     Slowthe, 631.  
 Embassadours sent by Vice to Freewill =  
     Temptacion, 1004.  
     Foly, 1004.  
     Sensualyte, 1004.  
 Minor Captains dubbed Knights by Vice  
 (14) =  
     Falshood, 674, 643.  
     Dyssimulacion 674, 636.  
     Symony, 975, 636.  
     Vsure, 975, 644.  
     Wrong, 975, 645.  
     Rebawdy, 975, 648.  
     Malyce, 976, 640.  
     Deceyte, 976, 647.  
     Ly, 976, 644.  
     Extorcion, 976, 637.  
     Periury, 977, 644.  
     Diffidence, 677, 652.  
     Apostasy, 677, 657.  
     Boldnesse in Yll, 978, 648.  
 The Minor Captains (75) =  
     Sacrylege, 636.  
     Symony 636, 975.  
     Dyssimulacion, 636, 974.  
     Manslaughter, 637.  
     Mordre, 637.  
     Theft, 637.  
     Extorcion, 637, 976.  
     Arrogance, 638.  
     Presumption, 638.  
     Contumacy, 638.  
     Contempcion, 639.  
     Contempt, 630.  
     Inobedience, 639.  
     Malyce, 640, 976.  
     Frowardnes, 640.  
     Gret Ielacy, 640.  
     Woodnesse, 641.  
     Hate, 641.  
     Stryfe, 641.  
     Impacience, 641.  
     Vnkyndnesse, 642.  
     Oppression, 642.  
     Wofuil Neglygence, 642.  
     Murmour, 643.  
     Myschyef, 643.  
     Falshood, 643, 974.  
     Detraccion, 643.  
     Vsury, 644, 975.  
     Periury, 644, 977.  
     Ly, 644, 976.  
     Adulacion, 644.  
     Wrong, 645, 975.  
     Rauyne, 645.  
     Vyolence, 645.  
     False Iugement, 646.  
     Obstynacy, 646.  
     Dysseyte, 647, 976.  
     Dronkenes, 647.  
     Improuydence, 647.  
     Boldnes in Yll, 648, 978.  
     Foule Rybaudy, 648, 975.  
     Fornycacion, 649.  
     Incest, 649.  
     Auoutry, 649.  
     Vnshamefastnes, 650.  
     Prodygalyte, 650.  
     Blaspheme, 651.  
     Veynglory, 651.  
     Worldly Vanyte, 651.  
     Ignoraunce, 652.  
     Diffydence, 652, 977.  
     Ipoerysy, 652.  
     Scysme, 653.  
     Rancour, 653.  
     Debate, 653.  
     Offense, 653.  
     Heresy, 654.  
     Errour, 654.  
     Idolatry, 654.  
     New Fangylnes, 655.  
     False Pretense, 655.

- Inordinat Desyre of Worldly Excel-  
lense, 656.  
Feynyd Pouert, 657.  
Apostasy, 657, 977.  
Disclaundyr, 658.  
Skorne, 658.  
Ielousy, 658.  
Hoordam, 659.  
Bawdry, 659.  
False Mayntenaunce, 659.  
Treson, 660.  
Abusion, 660.  
Pety Brybery, 660.  
Vsurgacion, 661.  
Horryble Vengeaunce, 661.  
Idylnesse, 666.  
Captains refused by Virtue who enter the  
service of Vice (st. 124-126)=  
    Nygromansy, 867.  
    Geomansy, 868.  
    Magyk, 868.  
    (Glotony), 868.  
    Adryomancy, 869.  
    Ornomancy, 869.  
    Pyromancy, 869.  
    Fysenamy, 870.  
    Pawmestry, 870.  
The Commons with Vice led by Idleness=  
    Bosters, 673.  
    Braggars, 673.  
    Brybores, 673.  
    Praters, 674.  
    Fasers, 674.  
    Strechers, 674.  
    Wrythers, 674.  
    Shakerles, 675.  
    Shaueldores, 675.  
    Oppressours, 676.  
    Crakers, 676.  
    Meyntenours of querelles, 677.  
    Lyers, 677.  
    Theues, 678.  
    Traytours, 678.  
    Herytykes, 678.  
    Charmers, 679.  
    Sorcerers, 679.  
    Scismatykes, 679.  
    Symonyakes, 680.  
    Vsurers, 680.  
    Multyplyers, 681.  
    Coyn wasshers, 681.  
    Coyn clyppers, 681.  
    Vsurpers, 682.  
    Extorcioners, 682.  
    Bakbyters, 683.  
    Glosers, 683.  
    Flaterers, 683.  
    Murmurers, 684.  
    Claterers, 684.  
    Tregetours, 685.  
    Tryphelers, 685.  
    Feyners of tales, 685.  
    Lurdeyns, 686.  
    Pykers of males, 686.  
    Rowners, 687.  
    Uagaboundes, 687.  
    Forgers of lesynges, 687.  
    Robbers, 688.  
    Reuers, 688.  
    Ryfelers, 688.  
    Choppers of churches, 689.  
    Fynders of tydynges, 689.  
    Marrers of maters, 690.  
    Money makers, 690.  
    Stalkers by nyght, 691.  
    Euesdroppers, 691.  
    Fyghters, 692.  
    Brawlers, 692.  
    Brekers of lofedayes, 692.  
    Getters, 693.  
    Chydlers, 693.  
    Causers of frayes, 693.  
    Tytyuylls, 694.  
    Tyrauntes, 694.  
    Turmentoures, 694.  
    Apostates, 695.  
    Relygyous dyssymulders, 695.  
    Closshers, 696.  
    Carders, 696.  
    Hasardoures, 696.  
    Tyburne coloppys, 697.  
    Pursekytters, 697.  
    Pylary knyghtes, 698.  
    Double tollingy myllers, 698.  
    Tapsters, 699.  
    Hostelers, 699.

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Hoores, 700.             | Enchauntours, 706.          |
| Baudys, 700.             | Renegates, 706.             |
| Blasphemers, 701.        | Ambidextres, 707.           |
| Ipocrytes, 701.          | Sekers of debates, 707.     |
| Brothelles, 702.         | P'seudo prophetes, 708.     |
| Brokers, 702.            | Sodomites, 708.             |
| Swervers, 702.           | Quelmers of chylldren, 709. |
| Dryuylls, 703.           | Fornycatours, 709.          |
| Dastardes, 703.          | Wetewoldes, 710.            |
| Dypsers of ryghtes, 703. | Auonterers, 711.            |
| Homycydes, 704.          | Auauntours of syn, 711.     |
| Poyseners, 704.          | Clappers, 712.              |
| Morderers, 704.          | Makers of clamours, 712.    |
| Skoldes, 705.            | Vnthyryftys, 713.           |
| Caytyffys, 705.          | Vnlustes, 713.              |
| Clappers, 705.           | Luskes, 714.                |
| Idolatres, 706.          | Loselles, 714.              |

## IN THE FIELD OF MICROCOSM (MS = MACROCOSM).

The Field : is named Microcosm, 932; in the midst = Conscience, 934. Syndereses, 937; its lord = Freewill, st. 143; approached by five highways open to the Vices and Virtues, st. 135; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 262, 265.

The battle : the field, first entered by Original Crime, st. 111 = driven out by Baptism, st. 112; sowed with evil seeds by Sensuality, st. 146-148; the battle between the vices and virtues, st. 148-162 (won by Perseverance, st. 157-162).

Freewill, Lord of Microcosm, st. 143; receives ambassadors from Virtue, st. 143, from Vice, st. 144; gives an ambiguous answer, st. 145; takes the part of Vice, st. 151-152, 155; repents and seeks the counsel of Conscience, st. 163; is sent to Humility, Confession, Contrition, Satisfaction and Penitance, st. 164; appears before Virtue, st. 174; blames Sensuality, st. 175-176; in recompense yields Microcosm to Virtue, st. 178-179; is made bailiff under Reason, st. 180.

Prescience, sent from above the firma-

ment by Alpha and Omega (v. l. 1158, 1176, 1467) to punish Vice, st. 166-167.

Predestinacion, sent to reward Virtue, st. 168-169; they vanish, st. 170.

Vice's host; scourged by Prescience, st. 167; some seek Peace, Mercy, Faith, Hope, Baptism, Confession, Conscience, Circumcision, st. 171-174.

Sadnesse, takes Sensuality prisoner, st. 177; is given the guidance of Sensuality in Microcosm, st. 181, 183, 193; with Reason clears Microcosm of the evil weeds of Sensuality, st. 195; with Reason prepares the field for the coming of the Lord of Light, st. 206.

Reason, rules in Microcosm, st. 180, 187, 193, 195, 197, 206.

Nature (has jurisdiction over living creatures, st. 65, 69, 190; has "carnal might," l. 1381) requires that Sensuality be given his liberty, st. 182; is powerless to help Atropos against Virtue, st. 194.

Morpheus, is given charge of five gates of Microcosm, st. 185-186.

Atropos, resolves to enter the service of God, st. 191; inquires the way to

Righteousness, st. 198, 199; is called Death, st. 201; is given power in Microcosm, st. 203, 207-209; vanishes, st. 210.

The Lord of Light, received in Microcosm, st. 204-206.  
Resyduacion, enters Microcosm but is repulsed, st. 192-195; interpretation by Doctrine, st. 266.

---

### THE ACCORD OF REASON AND SENSUALITY.

Reason, an embassador of Virtue and ruler in Microcosm; Lydgate muses how he may make Reason and Sensuality to accord, st. 1; Reason is sent by Virtue as an embassador to Free-will, st. 143; has no fear of Sensuality, st. 176; is given charge of Microcosm, st. 180; has guard over Sensuality, st. 187, 193 (v. 266); is superior to Nature, st. 194; with Sadness clears Microcosm of weeds, st. 195; is directed by Prayer, Fasting, Penance and Almsdeed st. 197; shows Atropos the way to Righteousness, st. 198-199; with Sadness, cleanses the field against the coming of the Lord, st. 206; comes with Sensuality to Doctrine to clear up Lydgate's doubt, st. 276-279; Reason and Sensuality agree as to the fear of Death, st. 280-282; vanishes, st. 283; interpretation of the concordance by Doctrine, st. 287-288.

Sensuality, an embassador of Vice to Free-will, and an ally of Nature; Lydgate muses how he may make Sensuality and Reason to accord, st. 1; Sensuality is sent by Vice as embassador to Freewill, st. 144; sows evil seeds in Microcosm, st. 146-148, 153; is charged with corrupting Freewill, st. 176; taken prisoner by Sadness and brought to Virtue, st. 177; is placed under the guidance of Sadness, st. 180-181; his liberty plead for by Nature, st. 182; is denied freedom in Microcosm, st. 183; guarded by Reason, st. 187; meets with Residivation but can do no evil, st. 193, 194; his evil weeds cut down by Reason and Sadness, st. 195; enters with Reason the School of Doctrine to clear up Lydgate's doubt, st. 276-279; agrees with Reason as to the fear of Death, st. 281; vanishes, st. 283; interpretation of the concord by Doctrine, st. 287-288.

---

### IN THE SCHOOL OF DOCTRINE, ST. 211-290.

(A FOUR-SQUARE ARBOR).

Wytte, chief porter, st. 212.

Holy Texte, st. 215.

Teachers of the people=

Glose, st. 215.

Dame Doctryne, st. 213-214, st. 229-  
231; as interpreter, st. 232-288.

Moralyzacion, st. 215.

Scrypture, st. 215, the Scribe.

## PICTURED ON THE WALLS:

## 1ST AND 2D WALLS: TIMES OF DEVIATION AND REVOCATION.

(The false gods are not here described).

- |                                           |                                            |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Adam, 1521.                               | Ionas, 1535, coming out of a whale's body. |
| Eue, 1521, holding an apple.              | Samuell, 1530, in a temple.                |
| Noe, 1522, in a ship.                     | Zakary, 1530, by an altar.                 |
| Abraham, 1522, holding a flintstone.      | Osee, 1538, } conspiring the death of      |
| Isaac, 1523, bound on a mount.            | Judthy, 1538, } Holofernes.                |
| Iacob, 1524, sleeping by a ladder.        | Salamon, 1539, dividing a child with his   |
| Joseph, 1526, in a cistern.               | sword.                                     |
| Moyses, 1527, with two tables.            | Melchisdech, 1543, offering bread and      |
| Aaron, 1528, } supporting Moses' arms.    | wine.                                      |
| Vrre, 1528,                               | Ioachym, 1545, } at the golden gate.       |
| Ely, 1529, in a burning car.              | Anne, 1545,                                |
| Elyze, 1530, clad as a hermit.            | John Baptyst, 1547, in a desert.           |
| Dauid, 1531, with a harp and stone sling. | Sodechy, 1549, } with faces toward         |
| Ieremy, 1532.                             | Amos, 1550, } Sophony.                     |
| Ezechiel, 1532.                           | Sophony, 1551.                             |
| Danyell, 1533, in a lion's den.           | Neemy, 1552.                               |
| Abacuc, 1534.                             | Esdras, 1552.                              |
| Mychee, 1534.                             | Iob, 1553, as an impotent.                 |
| Malachy, 1534.                            | Thoby, 1554, as patient.                   |

## 3D WALL=TIME OF RECONCILIATION.

- |                                        |                             |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Petyr, 1562, with keys.                | Gregory, 1576,              |
| Poule, 1563, with a sword.             | Ierome, 1576,               |
| James, 1563, with a scallop.           | Austyn, 1576,               |
| Thomas, 1564, with a spear.            | Ambrose, 1576,              |
| Phylyp, 1565.                          | Bernard, 1578.              |
| Iames the lesse, 1566.                 | Anselme, 1578.              |
| Bartylmew, 1567, all flayn.            | Thomas of Alquyn, 1579.     |
| Symon, 1568.                           | Domynyk, 1579.              |
| Thadée, 1568.                          | Benet, 1580.                |
| Mathy, 1569, } drawing lots.           | Hew, 1580.                  |
| Barnabe, 1569,                         | Martyne, 1581.              |
| Marke, 1570, a lion holding his book.  | John, 1581.                 |
| Mathew, 1571, like an angel.           | Crysostom, 1582.            |
| Luke, 1573, a calf holding his book.   | Beede, 1583.                |
| John, 1574, with a cup and palm in his | Orygene, 1584.              |
| hand, an eagle holding his book.       | Sybill, 1580.               |
|                                        | Andrew, 1595, with a cross. |

4TH WALL=TIME OF PILGRIMAGE, OR DANGEROUS PASSAGE, OR OF WAR.

(See the battle of the vices and virtues.)

#### DAME DOCTRINE.

Dame Doctrine, interpreter of the vision, summons Lydgate to draw near, st. 231-232; interprets the imprisonment of Eolus = unbridled wealth increases misrule, st. 233-234; Minos =Judge of Cruelness, st. 235; the complaint of Diana and Neptune= the blindness of fools, st. 235-236; the dismissal of the court=forgetfulness of fools, 237-239; the gods at the banquet = false idols, st. 240-249; the Time of Deviation, st. 241-249 =from Adam to Moses; the poets and philosophers=feigners of fables, st. 249; Time of Revocation = from Moses to Christ, st. 250-251; Time of Reconciliation=time of Grace, st. 251-252; Time of Pilgrimage=time

of war, st. 255; (the present battle between Vice and Virtue, st. 256); the complaint of Atropos=the constraint of friendship (Discord and Death) st. 257-260; the battle between Vice and Virtue=the moral struggle in the human soul, st. 261; Microcosm = the world of man, st. 262; Perseverance = continuance of good living, st. 263; Prescience and Predestination=rewarders of vice and virtue, st. 264; the five keys given to Morpheus = the five inward wits, st. 265; Residivation=return to sin, st. 266; the accord of Reason and Sensuality=in the fear of Death, st. 275-288; Doctrine vanishes, st. 290.

#### OTHER NAMES.

|                                                                                                   |                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| God, 1293, 1333, 1410, 1497, 1640, 1685,<br>1748, 1754, 1818, 2065, 2088; Lord                    | 1775; Son of Man, 1755; Crystyn,<br>1764. |
| God, 1930; Lord, 1819; 2093, Lord<br>of Glory, 2098; Fadry, 2104; Alpha<br>and Omega, 1158, 1176. | Mary, 2105.                               |
| Ihesu, 1121, 2105; Cryst, 1103, 1752,                                                             | Devyll, 21, 1818, 2080.                   |
|                                                                                                   | Peleus, feast of, 413.                    |
|                                                                                                   | Phebus, the sun, 1, 361.                  |
|                                                                                                   | Pictagoras, 3.                            |

#### CATALOG OF PLACES.

|                                              |                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| A lake, st., 1.                              | The school of Doctrine, a four-square<br>arbor, st., 212. |
| Lydgate's habitation, st., 2.                | Fantasy, 35, the dwelling place of Mor-<br>pheus.         |
| The Court of Minos in Pluto's realm, st., 4. | Synay, Mount of, 1747.                                    |
| The Palace of Apollo, st., 27, 36, 107, 192. |                                                           |
| The Palace of Virtue, st., 187.              |                                                           |
| The field of Microcosm, st., 134, 135.       |                                                           |

## GLOSSARY.

(For a fuller explanation of many words see the Notes.)

- Abew**, 1063. See *bewe*.
- Abhominal**, adj., 711, abominable.
- Aboorde**, 248. See *borde*.
- Abusion**, sb., 660, abuse.
- Abydyng**, sb., 34, dwelling place.
- Abyte**, vb., 194, abides, remains.
- Accusement**, sb., 160, accusation.
- Adryomancy**, sb., 899, (Aero-? or Hy-dro-?) divination by air (or water).
- Adulacion**, sb., 644, flattery.
- Afore**, adv., 1120, before.
- Afray**, sb., 720, battle.
- Aftyr**, prep., 76, in accordance with; *aftyr*, adv., 1024, afterwards.
- Agayn**, prep., 100 and often, against. See *ayene*.
- Aldyrs**, 490, 579, gen. pl. of all, *althrys* 599.
- Allyaunce**, sb., 991, alliance.
- All be**, conj., 476, al-be-it.
- Aloft**, adv., 101, in the air, on high.
- Altherlast**, 186, last of all.
- Aly**, sb., 1810, ally.
- Ambidextres**, sb., 707, double dealing persons.
- Ambyguyte**, sb., 1012, ambiguity.
- Anone**, adv., 14, 1015, soon.
- Apply**, vb., 485, incline.
- Aray**, sb., 282, 296, dress.
- Arere**, adv., 602, to the rear.
- Armure**, sb., 931, armor, weapons.
- Arow**, 763 = a row, host.
- Asaute**, vb., 588; sb., *assawte*, 1049, assault.
- Asay**, vb., 980, try.
- Asondre**, adv., 66, asunder.
- Aspyed**, vb., 1368, spied.
- Astert**, vb., 1267, escape.
- Astonyed**, vb., 1311, astounded, dismayed.
- Astyrlabes**, sb. pl., 1890, instruments for taking altitudes of the sun and stars (astrolabes).
- Ateynt**, vb., 362, disgraced, afflicted with sorrow.
- Atwene**, prep., 200, between.
- Atwyx**, prep., 1960, between.
- Auaunce**, vb., 954, advance; imper., *auaunt*, 1121.
- Auaantage**, sb., 727, 1033, advantage.
- Auauntours**, sb., 711, boasters.
- Auaylyd**, vb., 10, helped; *avale*, vb., 360, bow down—perhaps=to have force.
- Auenaunt**, adj., 885, agreeable, handsome.
- Auentur**, sb., 944, chance, adventure.
- Auoutry**, sb., 640, adultery; *auouters*, 711.
- Avowe**, sb., 983, vow.
- Auyse**, vb., 860, advise; sb., 1352, advice.
- Auysment**, sb., 140, deliberation.
- Awayers**, sb., 1741, waiters.
- Awter**, sb., 1537, altar.
- Ax**, vb., 520, ask; *axyd*, 1383.
- Ay**, adv., 110, 250, 966, ever.
- Ayene**, prep., 19, and often, against. See *agayn*.
- Ayeyn**, adv., 63 and often, again.
- Bake**, sb., 1005, back.
- Balaunce**, sb., 1012, scale, decision.
- Bankes**, sb., 105, shores of the sea.
- Banket**, sb., 188 and often, banquet.
- Batayll**, sb., 753, 1010, etc., battle.
- Baudys**, sb., 700, bawds.
- Bawdryk**, sb., 285, belt.
- Bayll**, sb., 1250, bailiff.
- Baytys**, sb., 506, lures.
- Be**, vb., 115 and often, been.
- Bedene**, adv., 277, together, in order, or perhaps an expletive.

- Beforn**, adv., 819; *before*, 1792, before.  
**Begoon**, vb., 441, suffered.  
**Begylyd**, vb., 571, diverted.  
**Beheste**, sb., 481, promise.  
**Behoue**, sb., 1260, advantage.  
**Beleue**, sb., 1679, belief.  
**Bende**, sb., 1172, band, company.  
**Benedycyte**, 1594, bless ye, equivalent to thank God.  
**Benygne**, adj., 1224, gracious, benignant.  
**Beseene**, vb., 275, 823, bedecked adorned.  
**Beseke**, vb., 1929, beseech.  
**Beset**, vb., 297, beset, studded with ornaments.  
**Beshut**, vb., 1169, shut up.  
**Bespreynt**, vb., 258, sprinkled.  
**Bestadde**, vb., 1106, placed, sorely imperilled.  
**Besy**, adj., 563, 746, 1811, busy, anxious.  
**Bettyr**, sb., 882, better.  
**Betyn**, vb., 105, beating (?) or beaten.  
**Bew**, adj., 1063 (beu) good, fine.  
**Blere**, vb., 1299, make dim.  
**Blyn**, vb., 1860, cease from.  
**Blyue**, adv., 941, quickly.  
**Bone**, adj., 720, ready; *bowne*, vb., 716, prepared.  
**Boorde**, sb., 1242, conversation; *boorde* 388, table; *aboerde* 248.  
**Boote**, sb., 1351, help, succor.  
**Borow**, vb., 1167, bail out, secure.  
**Boystous**, adj., 127, 156, boisterous, noisy.  
**Brayne**, vb., 499, started up.  
**Breched**, vb., 325, dressed with breeches.  
**Breede**, vb., 599, grow, breed.  
**Brennyng**, vb., 1529, burning.  
**Brokers**, sb., 702, receivers of stolen goods.  
**Brybores**, sb., 673, robbers, beggars.  
**But yef**, conj., 89, 490, unless.  
  
**Caltrop**, sb., 773, an iron instrument scattered in battlefields to impede cavalry.  
**Carders**, sb., 696, card players.  
**Carnall**, adj., 1381, worldly, fleshly.  
**Carpe**, vb., 402, play, speak; *carpyng*, 439.  
**Castaway**, sb., 1274, something of no value.  
  
**Caytyffys**, sb., 705, caitiffs.  
**Certeyne**, adv., 112 and often, certainly.  
**Chamelet**, sb., 320, camlet, a woven fabric of wool and cotton, or of goat's hair and silk.  
**Chare**, sb., 506, car.  
**Chases**, sb., 58, open hunting grounds.  
**Chaunce**, sb., 996, chance.  
**Chere**, sb., 263, 284, face, countenance; greeting, 418, 423.  
**Chese**, vb., 882, chose.  
**Chyders**, sb., 693, scolds.  
**Chyne**, vb., 536, to open in cracks or fissures.  
**Chyst**, sb., 1300, chest.  
**Claterers**, sb., 684, tattlers.  
**Clause**, sb., 136, proviso.  
**Cloke**, sb., 1503, cloak.  
**Closshers**, sb., 696, "closch"-players.  
**Clowte**, sb., 1274, clout, rag.  
**Cofres**, sb., 273, coffers for money.  
**Coloprys**, sb., 697. See note.  
**Columbyne**, adj., 374, dovelike, like the flower (?)  
**Comfort**, sb., 65, 532, pleasure; 206, confidence; 488, help, support; *comfortyd*, vb., 701.  
**Comon**, adj., 1938, familiar.  
**Compase**, sb., 1881, space.  
**Conceyte**, sb., 1089, thought, idea.  
**Concordaunce**, sb., 2005, agreement.  
**Condescendyd**, vb., 1974, agreed.  
**Condycyons**, sb., 322, states, circumstances.  
**Confound**, vb., 506, destroy; 1042, ?pass; *confounders*, 916.  
**Coniecture**, sb., 1604, opinion.  
**Coniugatoures**, sb., 915, uniters.  
**Constreynyd**, vb., 49, urged, compelled.  
**Context**, adj., 1503, woven firmly.  
**Contumacy**, sb., 638, resistance to authority.  
**Corner**, sb., 35, secluded place.  
**Correcion**, sb., 91, 486, correction, fine.  
**Cost**, sb., 119, coast; 952, region.  
**Costlew**, adj., 296, costly.  
**Couerture**, sb., 1723, covering, concealment.

- Coueyte**, vb., 1476, covet.  
**Counterfete**, vb., 212, construct.  
**Cowchyd**, vb., 287, 308, inlaid, laid in order.  
**Craft**, sb., 1710, business, 1134 craftiness.  
**Crakers**, sb., 676, braggarts, noisy fellows.  
**Croppe**, sb., 620, stem of a plant.  
**Cropyn**, vb., 1953, crept.  
**Cruell**, adj., 41, 471, harsh, severe, cruel; *cruelnes*, sb., 1643.  
**Crysmatory**, sb., 1444, a vessel for chrism.  
**Cryspe**, adj., 374, fresh.  
**Culuer**, sb., 1008, dove.  
**Curas**, sb., 345, cuirass, breastplate.  
**Cure**, sb., 59, 455, care.  
**Cure boyle**, 617, hard leather; v. note.  
**Cyrcte**, sb., 757, circuit.  
**Cysterne**, sb., 1526, cistern.
- Dalyaunce**, sb., 1509, talk.  
**Dampnacion**, sb., 1844, damnation.  
**Darkyd**, vb., 1193, lay hid.  
**Dastard**, sb., 1886, coward; pl. 703.  
**Date**, sb., 425, date, time. See note.  
**Daungere**, sb., 96, 527, 543, 2084, power; 165, 445 refusal.  
**Debonayr**, adj., 1441, gentle.  
**Defaute**, sb., 460, default; ? vb., 782.  
**Dele**, vb., 140, deal, distribute; *deele*, 1634, have dealings.  
**Dell**, sb., 1333, part; *dele*, 1027.  
**Deme**, vb., 1068, think, judge.  
**Demenyng**, sb., 269, demeanor.  
**Deputate**, vb., 1041, appointed.  
**Dere**, vb., 600, injure.  
**Dereygne**, vb., 612, set in order, fight.  
**Desert**, sb., 1288, merit.  
**Desperate**, adj., 28, causing despair.  
**Desyreth**, vb., 138, demands.  
**Disclaundyr**, sb., 658, slander.  
**Disport**, sb., 531, pleasure.  
**Do**, vb., 54 and often, done.  
**Dolour**, sb., 735, grief.  
**Domynacion**, sb., 1911, domination.  
**Doole**, sb., 487, dole, portion.  
**Dotyng**, adj., 1304, foolish, childish.
- Dowte**, sb., 761, 1001, 1321, 1929, doubt; vb., 523.  
**Dowty**, adj., 792, brave.  
**Draught**, sb., 1232, drawing, move at chess.  
**Dresse**, vb., 534, direct, reach, prepare; *myn ey gan I dresse*, 1512.  
**Dryuylls**, sb., 703, idiots.  
**Dubbyd**, vb., 974, conferred knighthood.  
**Dure**, vb., 1777, last, extend; *duryd*, 751.  
**Duresse**, sb., 1270, restraint.  
**Dynt**, sb., 487, dint, stroke.  
**Dyscordyd**, vb., 1973, differed.  
**Dyscrese**, vb., 232, decrease.  
**Dysdeynyd**, vb., 168, refused.  
**Dysgysyd**, vb., 343, dressed, tricked out.  
**Dysport**, sb., 67, 531, 671, pleasure, recreation.  
**Dyspurueye**, vb., 723, unprepared.  
**Dysseyte**, sb., 647, deceit.  
**Dysvsyd**, vb., 1400, disused, out of use.
- Effecte**, sb., 1617, 1916, conclusion, meaning.  
**Efte**, adv., 560, again.  
**Eftsones**, adv., 1007, immediately.  
**Egall**, sb., 154, equal.  
**Eke**, adv., 247, also.  
**Elles**, adv., 33, else; *ellys*, 161.  
**Enbrowderyd**, vb., 332, embroidered.  
**Enforme**, vb., 785, inform.  
**Enhaunse**, vb., 909, increase, raise.  
**Entent**, sb., 108, purpose; 451, attention, effort; *thentent*, 1904.  
**Entresse**, sb., 1941, interest.  
**Equyte**, sb., 495, justice.  
**Er, Ere**, adv., 8, 1558, before.  
**Eschew**, vb., 901, avoid.  
**Estate**, sb., 27, 424, state, place, rank.  
**Euerychoon**, 1806, each one.  
**Euesdroppers**, sb., 691, eves-droppers.  
**Euyll**, adv., 38, in an evil manner.  
**Evyn**, adv., 102, at the time; 202, evenly; adj., 886, even.  
**Execute**, vb., 53, bring to bear.  
**Exorte**, vb., 1488, teach, advise.
- Fade**, vb., 70, wither, decrease.

- Fall**, vb., 230, fall; 10, fallen, pp.; 124, befall; 558, happen; *fell*, 530, happened; *fyll*, 367, was fitting.
- Fande**, vb., 131, found.
- Fantasy**, sb., 35, 2050, fancy; *fantasyes*, pl., 1854.
- Fare**, vb., 810, proceed.
- Fasers**, sb., 674, hypocrites (facers).
- Fauset**, sb., 357 faucet.
- Fawchon**, sb., 283, falchion.
- Fawcon**, sb., 803, falcon.
- Fayne**, adj., 11, inclined, desirous.
- Fee**, sb., 995, domain.
- Feere**, sb., 1952, fear.
- Feet**, sb., 1064, deed.
- Fell**, adj., 434, cruel (many?).
- Fendes**, sb., 1412, fiendes.
- Fenyx**, sb., 810, phoenix.
- Fere**, 52, *in fere*=in company.
- Ferre**, adv., 102, 1613, 1627, 1913 far; *ferther*, 1932.
- Feruent**, adj., 1448, vehement.
- Fet**, vb., 544, bring, fetch.
- Feynt**, adj., 80, 359, weak, lacking color and energy.
- Finaunce**, sb., 1242, fine, forfeiture.
- Flayn**, vb., 1567, flayed.
- Foly**, sb., 1631, 2097, foolishness, sin.
- Fone**, sb., pl., 1748, foes.
- Foom** (?), sb., 104, foam.
- Forteresse**, sb., 187, palace; 303 figuratively as strong-hold.
- Forse**, sb., 1057, matter, consequence, *no forse*=no matter.
- Forsothe**, adv., 211, 581, in truth.
- Foryete**, vb., 239, forgotten.
- Fowtyn**, vb., 1826, fought.
- Foyson**, sb., 408, abundance, plenty.
- Frese**, sb., 325, a cloth.
- Froward**, adj., 1816, ungovernable; *frowardness*, 640.
- Fructuous**, adj., 900, fruitful, profitable.
- Fury**, sb., 53, judgment.
- Fygure**, sb., 1725, form of speech.
- Fyn**, adv., 1463, very.
- Fysenamy**, sb., 870, physiognomy.
- Gaderyd**, vb., 760, gathered.
- Galaunt**, adj., 296, splendid, gay.
- Gall**, sb., 1614, nut-gall.
- Gan**, vb., 202, 534, began, and used as auxiliary=did.
- Gape**, vb., 1316, desire, stand in expectation of.
- Garnysshdy**, vb., 377, adorned.
- Gastes**, sb., 754, guests, (cf. Lat. hostis) followers.
- Gate**, vb., 1836, won.
- Gawdy**, adj., 320, gaudy, perhaps dyed with weld.
- Geere**, sb., 886 ? riches (or ? jeer).
- Genalogy**, sb., 854, lineage.
- Geomansy**, sb., 868, divination by earth.
- Gesse**, vb., 1386, think, suppose.
- Get**, sb., 1678, 1657, fashion.
- Getters**, sb., 693, ? swaggerers or ? thieves.
- Gladyd**, vb., 383, made glad.
- Glosyng**, adj., 2081, flattering; *glosers*, sb., 683, flatterers.
- Go**, vb., 1396, gone.
- Gonnes**, sb., 1038, guns.
- Goostly**, adj., 852, spiritual.
- Gramercy**, 575, many thanks.
- Greefe**, sb., 47, harm; 216, sorrow.
- Grogynge**, sb., 217 (grocnyng) grumbling, malice.
- Grounde**, sb., 304, reason, agency, 1690, place.
- Gryffyng**, sb., 1718, grafting.
- Guerdoun**, sb., 2087, reward.
- Guy**, vb., 1720, guide.
- Guytornes**, 070, (? guydons) cavalry flags.
- Gyldyn**, adj., 367, golden.
- Gymlot**, sb., 357, gimblet.
- Gyse**, sb., 1065, manner.
- Habundaunce**, sb., 1714, abundance.
- Habylte**, sb., 1247, ability.
- Habytacle**, sb., 11, habitation.
- Happyd**, vb., 419, chanced.
- Hasardoures**, sb., 696, gamblers.
- Haunt**, sb., 1295, dwelling; *hauntyd*, 119.
- Heede**, sb., 10, head.
- Heede**, sb., 1815, care.
- Hele**, sb., 1853, health.
- Hem**, pr., 1636 and often, them.

- Her**, pr., 47, 65, 1635, their.  
**Herber**, sb., 1479, arbor.  
**Hermyne**, sb., 266, ermine.  
**Herowde**, sb., 719, herald.  
**Heuynesse**, sb., 186, slowness, 10 heavi-  
ness.  
**Heynous**, adj., 962, hateful, reprehensible.  
**Hit**, pr., 62 and often, it.  
**Hogy**, adj., 1005, huge.  
**Holly**, adv., 2014, wholly.  
**Hoole**, adj., 967, whole.  
**Houyd**, vb., 1608, hovered.  
**Howe be hit**, conj., 1081, how-be-it.  
**Hulke**, sb., 88.  
**Hy**, vb., 765, hie; *hyghyd*, 941, hied.  
**Hydry**, adv., 604, hither.  
**Hygh**, adj., 73, great.  
**Hygh-weyes**, sb., 1460, high-ways.  
**Hyghyd**, vb., 941, hastened.  
**Hym**, pr., 128 and often, them; also him.  
**Impotent**, sb., 1553, sick man.  
**Inconuenyent**, sb., 415, inconvenience.  
**Iape**, sb., 525, jest, mockery.  
**Iugement**, sb., 161, the court sentence.  
**Iurysdycion**, sb., 1111, power.  
**Iust**, vb., 1090, joust.  
  
**Karyk**, sb., 88, cark, a kind of ship.  
**Kendall**, adj., 356, describing a kind of  
cloth.  
**Keruell**, sb., 87, caravel.  
**Knowleche**, sb., 520, knowledge.  
**Knyt**, vb., 991, united; *knet*, 1186; *knette*,  
2008.  
**Konnyng**, sb., 854, wisdom.  
**Krany**, vb., 530, crack into fissures.  
**Krauers**, sb., 534, crevice.  
**Kynde**, sb., 1647, nature; 1544, kind.  
**Kyrtyll**, sb., 332, an outer garment.  
  
**Lak**, sb., 360, lack.  
**Langoure**, sb., 1853, languor.  
**Lappyd**, vb., 120, wrapped.  
**Large**, sb., 1230, liberty.  
**Largely**, adv., 1637, freely.  
**Largesse**, sb., 1327, liberty.  
  
**Lastuyous**, adj., 686, lascivious.  
**Laurer**, sb., 791, laurel.  
**Lawe**, vb., 404, laugh.  
**Leese**, vb., 1100, lose.  
**Leme**, sb., 1609, light.  
**Lere**, vb., 887, learn.  
**Lerne**, vb., 957, teach.  
**Lesynges**, sb., 687, lies.  
**Let**, vb., 1130, hinder; 251, avoid, neglect;  
520, given; 950, let; sb., 319,  
hinderance.  
**Lewde**, adj., 403, worthless, perhaps  
loud; sb., *lewedenesse*, 1633, free action.  
**Loft**, see *aloft*.  
**Longeth**, vb., 1327, belongs.  
**Loore**, sb., 2074, wisdom, lore.  
**Lore**, vb., 1309, lost.  
**Loselles**, sb., 714, worthless fellows, lorrels.  
**Lothe**, adj., 881, loath.  
**Lowte**, vb., 1089, 1430, 1925, bow, yield.  
**Lurdeyns**, sb., 686, block-heads.  
**Luskes**, sb., 714, lazy fellows.  
**Lust**, sb., 1307, strength, desire; 1277,  
wish.  
**Lyeftenaunt**, sb., 1254, lieutenant, repre-  
sentative.  
**Lyght**, adv., 1201, lightly.  
**Lyke**, vb., 225, please.  
**Lyklynes**, sb., 1066, probability.  
**Lyst**, vb., 1007, wished; 1291, wish.  
**Lythe**, vb., 105, lies.  
  
**Mace**, sb., 476, mace.  
**Malapert**, adj., 503, impudent, forward.  
**Males**, sb., 686, pockets.  
**Manaces**, vb., 61, threatens.  
**Maner**, sb., 60, kind of; on a *maner*; 5;  
any *maner* wey, 1735.  
**Marre**, vb., 556, destroy.  
**Mastresse**, sb., 243, mistress, governess.  
**Mawgre**, prep., 1381, in spite of.  
**Mede**, sb., 756, merit.  
**Medewes**, sb., 250, meadows.  
**Mekyll**, 92, "in as mekyll as"; *mochyll*,  
1813.  
**Mene**, sb., 1195, mediator; adj., 946, mean.  
**Mene**, adj., 1720, mean, low.  
**Merueyle**, sb., 103, marvel, wonder.

- Messe**, sb., 257, plate, table.  
**Mesure**, sb., 84, degree, *out of mesure* = beyond due degree or bounds.  
**Meuyd**, vb., 145, proposed; *meve*, 431, propose.  
**Meynt**, vb., 361, mingled.  
**Meyny**, sb., 853, followers, army; *meyne*, 774.  
**Monacorde**, sb., 7, agreement.  
**Moo**, 863, 1600; *more*, 1606, *moore* 1791.  
**Mood**, sb., 1571, manner.  
**Mortall**, adj., 732, 1450, deadly.  
**Mowte**, vb., 1951, been able.  
**Mowthe**, sb., 2060, mouth.  
**Multyplayers**, sb., 371, 681, money makers.  
**Murre**, sb., 329, murre, a cold in the throat.  
**Muryd**, vb., 1460, enclosed, walled.  
**Myscheue**, vb., 523, do harm; sb., *myschyeſ*, 620.  
**Myddes**, sb., 934, midst.  
**Myte**, sb., 1607, 1814, mite, thing of no value.  
  
**Ne**, 1197 and often, not.  
**Nere**, adv., 1, nearly.  
**Newe**, adv., 562, newly.  
**Next**, adj., 551, nearest.  
**Noonys**, 502, nonce.  
**Nouelte**, sb., 1705, new thing.  
**Noy**, vb., 774, annoy.  
**Nygromansy**, sb., 867, divination by the dead.  
  
**Obstacle**, sb., 9, hinderance.  
**Odoryferous**, adj., 336, fragrant.  
**Offyce**, sb., 494, employment.  
**On**, sometimes written *oo*, 117, one.  
**Onwarde**, adj., 162, further.  
**On lyue**, 1851, alive.  
**Oon**, 6 and often, one.  
**Oony**, adv., 1127, once.  
**Opteygne**, vb., 1353, obtain.  
**Or**, conj., 752, ere.  
**Ordynatly**, adv., 203, in good order.  
**Ordynaunce**, sb., 245, decision, law.  
**Ornomancy**, sb., 869, divination by birds.  
  
**Ospray**, sb., 813, the fish hawk.  
**Oſt**, sb., 668, host; *hooste*, 1124, cf. Fr. *ost*.  
**Othes**, sb., 502, oathes.  
**Ouches**, sb., 297, jewels.  
**Outher**, conj., 33, either; *owther*, 480.  
**Overstert**, vb., 1593, ? overlooked.  
**Oweth**, vb., 91, is under obligation, followed by an objective clause introduced by an infinitive, with *to*, as in Chaucer.  
  
**Pak**, sb., 368, company.  
**Panter**, sb., 822, panther.  
**Parable**, sb., 1987, parable.  
**Parciall**, adj., 153, partial.  
**Parde**, 619, 1275, (par Dieu).  
**Party**, adj., 316, partial, favoring one party.  
**Pase**, sb., 632, step, way.  
**Passyd**, vb., 368, surpassed.  
**Patent**, sb., 496, written bond of office.  
**Pauyse**, vb., 1640, used reflexively—bring to pause.  
**Pawmestry**, sb., 870, divination by the hand.  
  
**Paynym**, adj., 1679, pagan.  
**Penowns**, sb., 970, small banners.  
**Pere**, sb., 808, equal.  
**Perfyte**, adj., 1491, perfect.  
**Permyssyue**, adj., 1731, permitted.  
**Perpetuell**, adj., 899, constant.  
**Pesecoddy**, sb., 493, pea-pods.  
**Pety**, adj., 827, inferior.  
**Peyne**, sb., 746, 1811, pain, trouble.  
**Plenteuous**, adj., 408, plenty, cf. O. F. plentevous.  
**Plesaunce**, sb., 798, pleasure; *plesere*, 197.  
**Plyght**, vb., 1473, pledge.  
**Polytyk**, adj., 1742, wise.  
**Ponderously**, adv., 9, heavily.  
**Posternes**, sb., 1296, 1849, gates.  
**Poudryd**, vb., 266, powdered.  
**Praters**, sb., 674, trifling talkers.  
**Precept**, sb., 1682, command.  
**Predicament**, sb., 1329, in logic = a general class.  
**Prefxyd**, vb., 549, appointed.  
**Preparate**, vb., 1467, prepared.

- Presse**, sb., 256, throng; 1755, torment.  
**Prima facie**, 157, at first view.  
**Prophetyssa**, sb., 1589, prophetess.  
**Proue**, vb., 1728, test, determine.  
**Prykeryd**, adj., 328, prick-eared.  
**Prynte**, vb., 1784, impress.  
**Pryse**, sb., 1354, contest.  
**Pseudo-prophetes**, sb., 708, false prophets.  
**Purfylyd**, vb., 266, trimmed.  
**Purpur**, sb., 306, purple garments.  
**Purseuaunte**, 776, messenger.  
**Puruey**, vb., 75, provide; 946, *preveydyd*; 1020, *purveyde*.  
**Puryaunce**, sb., 956, 1433, provision, plan.  
**Put**, vb., 761, 1090, bring to a condition of; *put out*, 1481, expel.  
**Pyke**, vb., 1348, betake.  
**Pylary**, adj., 608, pillory.  
**Pylow**, sb., 12, pillow. Cf. Chaucer's *pilwe*.  
**Pylons**, sb., 1577, priests' hats.  
**Pyne**, sb., 216, punishment.  
**Pyromancy**, sb., 809, divination by fire.  
**Pyry**, sb., 126, storm of wind.  
  
**Quelmers**, sb., 709, killers, (infanticides).  
**Quod**, 1477, said; 1210, quoth.  
  
**Rancour**, sb., 235, enmity, malice.  
**Ray**, sb., 550, striped cloth.  
**Recorde**, vb., 272, remember.  
**Recouer**, vb., 769, ? cover over, win.  
**Recreaunt**, adj. 1256, defeated.  
**Redolence**, sb., 1011, fragrance.  
**Reft**, vb., 564, deprived.  
**Reherse**, vb., 83, relate.  
**Reioyse**, vb., 532, make glad.  
**Rekke**, vb., 500, care, reck.  
**Relese**, vb., 883, rehearse.  
**Reproche**, sb., 71, reproach.  
**Rerewarde**, sb., 1004, rear gaurd.  
**Resorte**, vb., 63, return.  
**Respyte**, sb., 170, postponement.  
**Resyduracion**, sb., 1310, back-sliding.  
**Retourne**, vb., 100 (active), turn back.  
**Reuers**, sb., 688, robbers.  
**Reyne**, vb., 2080, reign.
- Roode**, sb., 1040, cross.  
**Route**, sb., 388, 438, company.  
**Rought**, vb., 1197, reached.  
**Rowne**, vb., 12, consult with; *rownyd*, 142, consulted with; *rownyd*, 421, whispered; *rowners*, sb., 687, whisperers.  
**Russet**, adj., 325, coarse.  
**Rybaudy**, sb., 648, ribaldry.  
**Ryght**, adv., 101, very.  
**Rynde**, sb., 66, bark (tree).  
  
**Sabatouns**, sb., 346, sabbatons, armorial coverings for the feet.  
**Sad**, adj., 270, 300, 1501, earnest, serious.  
**Safe**, conj., 402, except.  
**Safecondyte**, sb., 89, 490, safe-conduct.  
**Sakcloth**, sb., 290, sackcloth.  
**Sanctuary**, sb., 1446, a sacred place.  
**Sauns**, prep., 1858, without, (v. Nares' Glos.).  
**Sauerys**, sb., 336, odors.  
**Sauoryd**, vb., 338, smelled.  
**Scalop**, sb., 1564, scallop-shell.  
**Scisme**, sb., 411, division.  
**Se**, pr., 376, she.  
**Sechte**, sb., 895, sect, kind.  
**See**, sb., 365, seat.  
**Seere**, adj., 1459, dry, withered.  
**Seethe**, sb., 97, restoration.  
**Sekerly**, adv., 787, surely.  
**Sentence**, sb., 136, 458, decision; 1863, truth.  
**Sequelys**, sb., 871, followers.  
**Sercote**, sb., 270, surcoat, outer coat.  
**Sesyd**, vb., 1744, ceased.  
**Sesyne**, sb., 1455, possession (a law term).  
**Set**, vb., 2016, settled.  
**Sew**, vb., 219; *su*, 238, entreat; *sewyd*, 1198.  
**Sewe**, vb., 1023, sowed.  
**Sewerte**, sb., 449, surety.  
**Sewre**, adj., 524, sure.  
**Shakerles**, sb., 675 (?).  
**Shaueldores**, sb., 675 (?).  
**Shent**, vb., 1092, destroyed, shamed.  
**Shoures**, sb., 322, gifts; *shoure*, 732, struggle.

- Slepyr**, adj., 1026, 1069, slippery.  
**Smokke**, sb., 377, smock.  
**Sobre**, adj., 1233, sad; 1660, sober.  
**Sodomites**, sb., 708, fornicators.  
**Soort**, sb., 619, troop, company; *sorte*, 1489.  
**Soot**, sb., 618, soot.  
**Sore**, adv., 341, greatly.  
**Sothe**, sb., 1226, truth.  
**Sotyll**, adj., 1694, 1701, subtle.  
**Sought**, vb., 788, went.  
**Sownde**, vb., 1688, sound.  
**Sowneth**, vb., 1302, tends, inclines; *sownyd*, 1987, seemed.  
**Spere**, sb., 3, sphere; *speres*, pl., 1698.  
**Spreynt**, see bespréynt.  
**Stadde**, see bestadde.  
**Stale**, vb., 2040, stole.  
**Stant**, vb., 1887, stands.  
**Stede**, sb., 340, place; 1129, steed.  
**Steuyn**, vb., 824, proclaim, announce.  
**Stoute**, adj., 313—said of eyes: 430—said of words: haughty, resolute, bold.  
**Strayte**, adj., 45, strict; adv., 539—narrowly.  
**Strechers**, sb., 674, ?liars.  
**Stremes**, sb., 1855, streams.  
**Streynghthe**, vb., 751, strengthen.  
**Streytyd**, vb., 1033, restricted, put in bonds.  
**Styrt**, vb., 566, started.  
**Superfluyte**, sb., 1824, superfluity.  
**Superficiall**, adj., 538, pertaining to the surface.  
**Sustynaunce**, sb., 336, support, living.  
**Sy**, vb., 1058, saw.  
**Sygne**, sb., 1442, miracle.  
**Sykerly**, adv., 270, surely.  
**Sylogyse**, vb., 19, reason, contend, argue.  
**Symonyakes**, sb., 680, simonists.  
**Synderesys**, sb., 937, syneresis.  
**Syngler**, adj., 71, special.  
**Syth**, conj., 1354, since.  
**Sythe**, sb., 127, time.  
**Swage**, vb., 1038, ?discharge.  
**Swemfully**, adv., 1223, sorrowfully.  
**Swet**, sb., 104, 2044, sweat. In 2044 said of body.  
**Take**, vb., 59 and often, taken; *takyn* 1626.  
**Tane**, vb., 2018, taken.  
**Tayll**, sb., 754, company, number.  
**Teche**, vb., 1701, teach; *taught*, 1231.  
**Tendre**, vb., 135, consider, have a care for.  
**Tenebrus**, adj., 1169, dark.  
**Than**, adv., 89 and often, then.  
**The**, pr., 52 and often, thee.  
**Then**, conj., 1607, than.  
**Tho**, pr., 447, those.  
**Thorough**, prep., 70, on account of (preceded by where): *thorow*, 2061.  
**Thought**, sb., 1234, 1360, 2051, anxiety, care; 1991, thought.  
**Thryd**, 1776, third.  
**Thynne**, adj., 1501, thin.  
**To**, adv., 511 and often, too.  
**Tong**, sb., 367, tongue.  
**Tonne**, sb., 1897, tub.  
**Trapure**, sb., 815, trappings.  
**Traunse**, sb., 15, trance.  
**Trauayll**, sb., 1071, work.  
**Trayne**, sb., 773, snare.  
**Tregetours**, sb., 685, jugglers.  
**Trespase**, sb., 221, injury, offense.  
**Triumphall**, adj., 2087, triumphal.  
**Trouthe**, sb., 1473, troth.  
**Trow**, vb., 957, believe; 1386, know *trowyd*, 432.  
**Try** (out), vb., 2071, separate.  
**Tryacle**, sb., 12, a medicine, (cf. treacle).  
**Tryfyls**, sb., 1854, trifles, cheats.  
**Trypartyte**, adj., 1031, divided into three parties.  
**Tryphelers**, sb., 685, cheaters.  
**Tweyne**, sb., 1066, two.  
**Tyburne**, sb., 697. See note to this line.  
**Tyde**, sb., 334, time.  
**Tylthe**, sb., 1710, cultivation.  
**Tyne**, 1063, tiny (generally preceded by little, as here)..  
**Tytyuyllys**, sb., 694. See note on line 694.  
**Vnbrydelyd**, vb., 1630, unrestrained.  
**Vnderlowte**, sb., 1273, servant.

- Vndyrtake**, vb., 233, 1390, 1411, be surety, promise.
- Vnkynde**, adj., 1023, unnatural, cruel.
- Vnlustes**, sb., 713, idle men.
- Vre**, sb., 1448, use, practice.
- Vsyd**, vb., 117, was accustomed to do.
- Vtter**, adj., 594, absolute.
- Valewyng**, vb., 1607, valuing.
- Varyaunce**, sb., 244, difference, dispute.
- Vaward**, sb., 602, van.
- Verrey**, adj., 918, 2002, true.
- Veryly**, adj., 2042, truly.
- Vouchesafe**, vb., 2019, granted.
- Walewyng**, vb., 557, wallowing.
- Wanton**, adj., 378, sportive; 1230, reckless; sb., *wantoness*, 1362, 1635.
- Ware**, adj., 128, aware.
- Wede**, sb., 377, garment.
- Wedyr**, sb., 530, weather.
- Welde**, vb., 670, wielded.
- Wele**, sb., 56, 210, weal, prosperity.
- Wende**, vb., 739, 1623, go; see *wene*.
- Wene**, vb., 278, 985, think, suppose; *wen-  
yng*, 1651, 1713; *wend*, 239; *wende*, 1344.
- Weryd**, vb., 379, wore.
- Wetewoldes**, sb., 710, tame "cuckolds."
- Wex**, vb., 1369, 1415, grow.
- Whan**, conj., 1, when.
- Whedyr**, conj., 24, whether.
- Whereas**, adv., 118, where.
- Whereon**, adv., 48, whereof.
- Whew**, sb., 1316, 2049, hue.
- Whore**, adj., 400, white; *whore-berdy'd*= hoar-bearded.
- Whyle**, sb., 129, time.
- Wood**, adj., 1314, mad (also *mad* 347).
- Woote**, vb., 621, knows; *wete*, 1011.
- Wrapped**, vb., 1383, wrapped.
- Wrethe**, sb., 417, wrath.
- Wrought**, vb., 1882, done.
- Wrythers**, sb., 674?
- Wyght**, sb., 987, 1034, man.
- Wyre**, sb., 1872, doubt.
- Wyse**, sb., 51, manner.
- Wysshe**, vb., 1384, direct, recommend.
- Wyt**, sb., 896, wisdom.
- Ydiote**, sb., 1963, idiot.
- Yef**, conj., 56, 63, etc., if.
- Yeue**, vb., 17, 77, give.
- Yuy**, sb., 355, yew.
- Ywys**, adv., 879, 1056, certainly.

## SPECIAL PHRASES AND PROVERBS.

- All and some**, 192, each and all, the whole matter.
- In especiall**, 116, 1445, 1500, especially.
- By and by**, 202, then; 302, 800, one after the other.
- More and lesse**, 306, 536, more or less; 1264, altogether.
- Lest and moost**, 706, 784, high and low degree. *Most or leste*, 480.
- To or fro**, 24.
- Fer and wyde**, 626.
- Make and marre**, 550.
- For feyre or foul**, 475.
- For the nonnys**, 502, for the nonce.
- Out of mesure**, 84, 102, beyond measure or reason.
- What in the deuylls date**, 425, exclamatory.
- Howe a deuyll way**, 1317, exclamatory.
- Croppe and roote**, 620, the whole of anything.
- Roote and rynde**, 66, the whole tree.
- Kepe noon in store**, 151, keep nothing in reserve.
- Not worth a peere (pear)**, 597.
- Then a myte**, 1607; *nat a myte*, 1814, *myte* a small thing.
- Rekke nat a strawe**, 500.
- Nat yeue two peseccoddy**, 403.
- Bryght as glas**, 276.
- Breched lyke a bere**, 325.
- Grene as any gresse**, 334.
- Here shone as wyre of goold bryght**, 373.
- As a geste came in wyndyng shete**, 420.
- Tomblyng as a ball**, 557.
- Harde as glas**, 614.
- Hard as horn**, 618.
- Blakker then soot**, 618.
- Slepyr as an yele**, 1026.
- As a castaway or a shoo clowte, 1274.
- Close as in a chyst, 1300.
- Coloryd as a crystall, 1603.
- Darke as a myste or a feynyd fable, 1988.
- Wyt ys oute where hyt went ynne, 1099.
- Dreuynt to her wyttes ende, 1665.
- My wyt ys so thynne, 1097.
- Ferre ys fro the wytte and ferther good mende, 1032.
- Thy wytte stant acrooke, 1887.
- For feere I lookyd as blak as a coole. I wold haue cropyne in a mouse hoole, 1052 53.
- Howe the game gooth, 420, how the matter stands.
- Ledeth by the sleue, 1680, causes to follow submissively, cf. *toke me by the sleeve* 14, 2033.
- Cast in a boon (of contention), 1805.
- Hit hyng in hys balaunce, 1012, it depended upon his decisions.
- Of all maner greynes she sealyd the patent, 202; cf. "wenyng in her honde had leyn all power of cornys habundaunce" 1713 14; v. 440, ye seelyd my patent.
- Take the mantell and the ryng, 207, vow perpetual widowhood.
- Varyaunt Fortune, 318.
- Taught to drawe another draught, 1232, taught to make another move—to do differently.
- Lerne hem a new daunce, 957, teach them a new motion.
- Fro poost to pylour was he made to daunce, 1147, he was driven from one thing to another without purpose.

Made her beerdys on the new gete, 1657.

changed their minds.

The bende of your bowe begynneth to  
slake, 1243-44.

Put in prese, 1755, enter into torment.

He must nedys go that the deuell dryues,  
21.

Where vertew occupyeth must nedys  
well grow, 1372.

A false myrrour deceyueth a mannys  
look, 1727.

Bettyr late then neuer, 1204.

Bettyr be dede than a lyve, 518.

He ys nat as he doth apere, 2083.

As good ys ynowgh as a gret feste, 2035.

Such as ye haue sowe must ye nedes

reepe, 1244-45.

Bettyr were a chylde to be vnbore  
then let hyt haue be wyll and for  
euer be lore, 1208-9.

Wealth unbrydelyd encreseth mys-  
rewle, 1031.

Fooles ouercome ay wyse men, 1661.

Try out the corne clene from the chaff,  
2071 "take the best and let the  
worst be," 2070.



OCT 28 1968 19

REG. OFF. JULY 1 1968

JUL 1 1977

REG. OFF. JULY 1 1977

BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C055152501

